

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being filed via  
EFS-Web with the United States Patent and Trademark Office  
on 11/5/07

TOWNSEND and TOWNSEND and CREW LLP

By: ADW:3

PATENT  
Attorney Docket No. 015280-356100US  
Client Ref. No. E-201-1998/0-US-06

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

In re application of:

PASTAN et al.

Application No.: 09/673,707

Filed: January 11, 2001

For: RECOMBINANT IMMUNOTOXIN  
DIRECTED AGAINST THE HIV-1  
GP120 ENVELOPE GLYCOPROTEIN

Confirmation No. 3958

Examiner: Zeman, Robert A.

Technology Center/Art Unit: 1645

APPELLANTS' BRIEF UNDER  
37 CFR §41.37

Mail Stop Appeal Brief  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Further to the Notice of Appeal mailed concurrently with this paper regarding the  
above-referenced application, Appellants submit this Brief on Appeal.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REAL PARTY IN INTEREST .....	3
2. RELATED APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES.....	3
3. STATUS OF CLAIMS .....	3
4. STATUS OF AMENDMENTS .....	3
5. SUMMARY OF CLAIMED SUBJECT MATTER .....	3
6. GROUNDS OF REJECTION TO BE REVIEWED ON APPEAL.....	4
7. ARGUMENT .....	5
8. CONCLUSION.....	27
9. CLAIMS APPENDIX.....	28
10. EVIDENCE APPENDIX.....	36
11. RELATED PROCEEDINGS APPENDIX .....	37

### **1. REAL PARTY IN INTEREST**

The real parties in interest in this proceeding are the Government of the United States, as represented by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, and The Scripps Research Institute.

### **2. RELATED APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES**

To the best of the undersigned's knowledge, there are no related appeals or interferences.

### **3. STATUS OF CLAIMS**

Claims 1-7, 9, 11, 19-24, 52-55, 57, 59-65, 68-75, 77, 79-88, 90-97, 99, and 101-103 are pending and rejected.

Claims 19-24, 59-65, 79-88, 90-97, 99, and 101-103 are withdrawn.

### **4. STATUS OF AMENDMENTS**

All amendments have been entered.

### **5. SUMMARY OF CLAIMED SUBJECT MATTER**

The invention at issue relates to chimeric molecules, known as immunotoxins, comprising a toxin fused to portions of an antibody known as 3B3. The 3B3 antibody binds to gp120, a 120 kD glycoprotein encoded by the "*env*" ("envelope") gene of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1) and present on the surface of cells infected by HIV-1.

The independent claims are presented below as claims chart showing in brackets support in the specification by page and line number for each element:

1. An immunotoxin [page 11, lines 9-11] comprising a cytotoxin [page 11, lines 9-11] attached to an anti-gp120 antibody [page 11, lines 7-11] having the binding specificity to the CD4 binding site of gp120 of 3B3 Fv [page 2, lines 29-32] (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2 [sequence listing]) and a minimum binding

affinity to gp-120 of 3B3 Fv [page 2, lines 29-32] (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2 [sequence listing]), wherein said immunotoxin specifically binds to and kills mammalian cells infected with HIV-1 [page 11, lines 9-11].

52. A kit for killing cells that display a gp120 protein, said kit comprising a container containing an immunotoxin [page 11, lines 9-11] comprising a cytotoxin [page 11, lines 9-11] attached to an anti-gp120 antibody [page 11, lines 7-11] having the binding specificity to the CD4 binding site of gp120 of 3B3 Fv [page 2, lines 29-32] (SEQ ID NO.:1 [sequence listing]) and a minimum binding affinity to gp-120 of 3B3 Fv [page 2, lines 29-32] (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2 [sequence listing]), wherein said immunotoxin specifically binds to and kills mammalian cells infected with HIV-1 [page 11, lines 9-11].

68. A composition, said composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient; and

an immunotoxin [page 11, lines 9-11] comprising a cytotoxin [page 11, lines 9-11] attached to an anti-gp120 antibody [page 11, lines 7-11] having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv [page 2, lines 29-32] (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2 [sequence listing]).

## 6. GROUNDS OF REJECTION TO BE REVIEWED ON APPEAL

A. Are the claims obvious under 35 U.S.C. §103 (a) over Matsushita et al., Aids Research Human Retroviruses 6(2):193-203 (1990), in view of Barbás, Proc Natl Acad Sci (USA) 91:3809-3813 (1994), and Pastan, U.S. Patent No. 5,458,878?

B. Are claims 1-7, 9, 11, 52, 55, 57, 68-75 and 77 indefinite under 35 U.S.C. §112, second paragraph, for reciting the phrase "which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2"?

## **7. ARGUMENT**

### **I. Introduction**

As noted above, the invention at issue relates to chimeric molecules, known as immunotoxins, comprising a toxin fused to antibodies having the binding specificity and affinity of an antibody known as 3B3. *See*, specification, at page 11, lines 7-11. The 3B3 antibody binds to a particular epitope of gp120, a 120 kD glycoprotein encoded by the "env" ("envelope") gene of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1) and present on the surface of cells infected by HIV-1. *See*, specification, at page 11, lines 12-13.

The Final Action (the "Action") rejects the claims on two grounds, obviousness and indefiniteness. The more important of the rejections is that the claims are as obvious under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) over Matsushita et al., *Aids Research Human Retroviruses* 6(2):193-203 (1990) (hereafter, "Matsushita"), in view of Barbas, *Proc Natl Acad Sci (USA)* 91:3809-3813 (1994) (hereafter "Barbas") and Pastan, U.S. Patent No. 5,458,878 (hereafter, "the '878 Patent"). The Matsushita reference discloses an anti-gp120 antibody, named "0.5 $\beta$ ". The 0.5 $\beta$  antibody binds to a portion of gp120 that mutates rapidly and is variable among strains of HIV. In the Matsushita reference, the antibody is coupled to a mutated *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A (hereafter, "PE"). Since 2003, the Examiner has taken the position that, given that Matsushita disclosed an antibody reactive with a number of HIV isolates, it would have been obvious for one of ordinary skill to use the 3B3 antibody in the Matsushita immunotoxin. *See*, June 9, 2003 Office Action at pages 10-11.

As will be shown in more detail below, Applicants rebutted the rejection by introducing evidence that, after the Matsushita reference was published, immunoconjugates directed against gp120 went into clinical trial, and failed. Applicants further presented evidence, in the form of retrospective statements in the open scientific literature, on how persons of skill in the art responded to the disappointing results of the clinical trials. Those statements showed that, in the wake of the trials, persons of skill abandoned pursuing the further development of immunoconjugates against gp120. Applicants observed that persons of skill had before them not only the teachings of Matsushita's 1990 reference, but also the results of the 1994 trials, and that

the motivation to modify the Matsushita immunotoxin found by the Examiner in the reference had been removed by the later clinical trial results.

Until the present Final Rejection, the Examiner simply dismissed the evidence regarding the CD4-PE conjugates on the grounds that they were not analogous to the immunotoxins of the invention.<sup>1</sup> Unfortunately, from 2003 until 2005, the Examiner failed to present any rationale or explanation supporting this conclusion. In a brief note in a 2005 Advisory Action and more fully in an Office Action dated April 2006, the Examiner set forth his rationale, which turned out to be based on the belief that CD4-PE would bind to cells expressing CD4, while the Matsushita immunotoxin would bind only to cells infected with HIV. The Applicants corrected this fundamental misunderstanding of the science with the declaration of a non-inventor who is an expert in the area of targeted toxins such as immunotoxins and who was a co-author on seven pre-clinical studies on CD4-PE. The Declaration explained that CD4-PE does not bind to CD4-expressing cells and that CD4-PE and the Matsushita immunotoxin were in fact analogous in terms of the cells that they bind.

Applicants also provided statements from the open scientific literature as to the belief in the field following the clinical trials involving CD4-PE discussed above. It is unusual for there to be direct statements in the scientific literature as to the conclusion drawn by persons of skill following an event. But, those statements exist in this case, and show that the conclusions actually drawn persons of skill in the art are directly opposed to the conclusions the Examiner thinks persons of skill would have drawn. The examination process normally relies on an examiner's conclusions as to what would have been obvious to a person of skill in the art based on the information at the time. When there is evidence as to what persons of skill actually concluded, the actual conclusions reached by persons of skill should be given precedence over an examiner's conjecture.

---

<sup>1</sup> Since CD4 is a cell surface determinant, not an antibody, chimeric molecules comprising CD4 and a toxin are not generally referred to in the art as "immunoconjugates" or "immunotoxins." The Examiner, however, referred to the CD4 conjugates as "immunotoxins" throughout the prosecution, and Dr. FitzGerald referred to them as such in his Declaration to avoid confusion as he quoted portions of the April 13, 2006 Office Action and then responded to the quoted passages. Accordingly, the discussion below will generally refer to chimeric molecules comprising CD4 and a toxin, such as PE, as immunotoxins when summarizing the Examiner's contentions and in presenting Dr. FitzGerald's Declaration, and will otherwise refer to them as "conjugates."

The current Final Action at last acknowledges the factual errors which underlay the rejection for the previous three years. Instead of thoughtfully reconsidering and withdrawing the rejection, however, the Examiner has recharacterized the grounds of the rejection in a way to continue holding that the CD4-PE conjugates and the claimed immunotoxins are not analogous. The Action thereby discounts the effect on persons of skill of the results of the 1994 CD4-PE clinical trials.

In short, the obviousness rejection in this case was originally grounded on a misunderstanding of the science. When the misunderstanding of the science was corrected, the rejection was simply maintained. Further, evidence of what persons of skill in the art actually concluded in light of the information available at the time was ignored in favor of hindsight speculation of what they should have concluded. Applicants respectfully submit that, viewed in light of the science and in view of what persons of skill actually concluded, the obviousness rejection cannot be sustained.

Finally, as will be shown below, the indefiniteness rejection is without merit as the claims cannot be read as contended in the Action. The Board's consideration of these matters and allowance of the claims is therefore respectfully requested.

## **II. The Obviousness Rejection**

Since 2003, the claims have been rejected as obvious over Matsushita in view of Barbas and Pastan. Matsushita et al. discloses an anti-gp120 antibody, named "0.5 $\beta$ " coupled to a toxin comprised of a mutated *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A, or "PE". The current Action maintains the rejection and presents its position as a series of points and responses thereto. To facilitate the Board's review, the individual parts of the rejection are grouped and addressed in logical groups, and the separate points set forth by the Action are then addressed in turn.

### **A. Any motivation created by the Matsushita immunotoxins was destroyed by the failure of anti-gp120 immunoconjugates in clinical trials**

The obviousness rejection rests on the presumption that, at the time the present invention was made, the person of skill would have been motivated to modify the 0.5 $\beta$ -PE

immunotoxin disclosed by Matsushita in 1990 by using antibodies with the binding specificity and affinity of the claimed immunotoxins. As noted above, both Matsushita's 0.5 $\beta$ -PE immunotoxin and the inventors' 3B3 antibody binds to a glycoprotein protein called gp120 that exists in the immunodeficiency virus HIV-1 and in human cells infected with HIV-1. See, e.g., specification, at page 11, lines 9-11.

The rejection's reliance on the Matsushita reference as providing motivation to the person of skill to create the immunotoxins of the present invention is misplaced. In focusing only on Matsushita, it ignores, and therefore fails to give proper weight to, all of the information available to the person of skill at the time the invention was made. That information includes the results of two clinical trials of toxins targeted to the HIV gp120 glycoprotein, and evidence of record as to how persons of skill responded to those results.

Following the publication of the Matsushita reference, two anti-gp120 conjugates went into clinical trials, and both failed. Evidence of the failure of the conjugates in the clinical trials was presented to the Examiner in the form of abstracts of two references: Ramachandran et al., J. Infect Dis 170:1009-13 (1994) (hereafter, "Ramachandran"), and Davey et al., J. Infect Dis 170:1180-8 (1994) (hereafter, "Davey"). The anti-HIV-1 conjugates used in the trials were a CD4-PE40 conjugate and a soluble CD4 ("sCD4")-PE conjugate. CD4 is a cell surface antigen bound by gp120. Thus, the CD4-PE conjugates tested in the clinical trials, like the 3B3-targeted immunotoxins of the invention, bind to the gp120 glycoprotein.<sup>2</sup> Further evidence regarding the clinical trials is set forth in the specification of the application under examination, which, at page 35, line 26 to page 36, line 6, reports that clinical trials of a targeted toxin using a portion of the CD4 molecule containing the gp120 binding site as the targeting moiety demonstrated unexpectedly high toxicity.

Applicants also presented two references from the scientific literature showing how persons of skill responded to the results of the clinical trials: Goldstein et al., J. Infect Dis 181:921-926 (2000) (hereafter, "Goldstein") and a "Perspective" published in the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences shortly after the priority date of the subject application,

---

<sup>2</sup> Both the CD4-PE conjugate and the sCD4-PE conjugate both comprise a form of CD4 and both bind gp120. For convenience of reference, they will be referred to herein collectively as "CD4-PE".



Berger, Moss and Pastan, Proc Natl Acad Sci 95:1151-11513 (1998) (hereafter, "Berger et al.")<sup>3</sup>  
The Goldstein reference looks back at the state of the art following the disappointing reports set forth in Ramachandran and Davey and states that, in the wake of these reports, the approach of using anti-HIV antibodies as targeting moieties for anti-HIV immunotoxins had been abandoned. The Berger et al. reference, in turn, states:

The high hopes from the promising preclinical findings [with respect to the use of CD4-PE40 conjugates] were dashed in the initial Phase I trials with HIV-infected patients [citations omitted]. . . . The significant but reversible hepatotoxicity greatly diminished enthusiasm for CD4-PE40 in particular and for Env-targeted toxins in general. The CD4-PE40 clinical program was terminated."

(Emphasis added).<sup>4</sup>

Therefore, while the Matsushita reference, published in 1990, may have suggested the use of immunotoxins against the HIV glycoprotein gp120, by 1994, persons of skill in the art were aware of the Ramachandran and Davey articles reporting the failure in clinical trials of two conjugates targeting gp120. Two separate references in the scientific literature, reviewing how persons of skill interpreted those failures of skill in the art, set forth the effect of those results on the persons of skill in the art. The Goldstein reference states that those results caused practitioners to abandon the use of anti-HIV immunotoxins. The Berger et al. reference states that the results of the clinical trials greatly diminished enthusiasm for *Env*-targeted toxins. The gp120 glycoprotein is encoded by the *env* gene of HIV and is therefore encompassed by the Berger et al. statement quoted above. (*See, e.g.*, Berger, at page 11511, paragraph bridging left and right hand columns: "The Env-binding moieties used have included the extracellular regions of CD4 as well as Fab regions of anti-Env antibodies (directed at either the external subunit gp120 or the transmembrane subunit gp41).") In other words, persons of skill as of the 1998

<sup>3</sup> To avoid the possibility of confusion, references herein to Berger et al. refer to this 1998 PNAS publication and not to two other publications by Dr. Berger whose abstracts are presented as Exhibits to the FitzGerald Declaration.

<sup>4</sup> During prosecution, the Examiner dismissed the Goldstein reference as irrelevant since it was published after the priority date. Applicants explained that it was cited only for its retrospective statements as to what persons of skill thought in the wake of the CD4-PE clinical trials. See, Amendment dated September 19, 2005, at pages 20-

priority date of the application would have before them not only the Matsushita reference relied on by the rejection, but also the results of the clinical trials, which two references tell us caused persons of skill to abandon the approach of using anti-gp120 antibodies to target toxins to HIV-infected cells. Accordingly, following the 1994 clinical trial results, persons of skill no longer had motivation to modify Matsushita to develop anti-gp120 immunotoxins, as shown by the Berger and Goldstein references as well as by the gap of years between those trials and the present invention.

The present invention stems in part from the realization by the present inventors that there had been a further change in the treatment landscape for HIV. New classes of anti-HIV drugs, such as protease inhibitors, had become available, resulting in the treatment regimens known as "highly active anti-retroviral therapy", or "HAART". The inventors realized that, while toxins targeted to gp120 had failed as a first line therapy, as contemplated before the failure of the CD4-PE trials, toxins targeted to gp120 could be used to kill cells serving as reservoirs of HIV in persons in whom HIV loads had already been reduced by HAART. *See*, specification, at page 11, lines 13-18; Berger et al., at page 11511, first paragraph. This was a new use unforeseen at the time of Matsushita and the CD4-PE trials. Thus, while development of toxins targeted to gp120 had been abandoned following the 1994 CD4-PE trials, the inventors realized HAART had changed the landscape. Hence, they developed the compositions encompassed by the claims under rejection as a solution to the long felt for additional HIV treatment strategies, and two of them then served as co-authors on the Berger paper explaining that change in the landscape to the scientific community in the Berger reference.

---

21. The Berger reference was also submitted with the September 2005 Amendment. As discussed in the text, it does not appear that the Examiner has ever addressed or considered the Berger reference.

**B. The Ramachandran And Davey Conjugates And The Immunotoxins Of The Invention Are Analogous**

**1. The Ramachandran And Davey Conjugates And The Immunotoxins Of The Invention Bind and Kill The Same Target Cells**

The Office Action dated April 13, 2006 (the "April 2006 Action") states that the CD4-PE conjugates of Ramachandran and Davey that failed in clinical trials are not analogous to the immunotoxins of the claimed invention "since they target different cellular components." April 2006 Action, at page 6. The Action further stated that "[t]he immunotoxins of the instant invention . . . target cells expressing gp120 on their surface (i.e., infected cells) whereas the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin of Ramachandran et al. target any cell expressing CD4. Hence any 'results' based on the application of CD4-PE40 immunotoxin would not have any bearing on the perceived efficacy of immunotoxin based on the combination of the cited references. The same is true for the sCD[4]-PE immunotoxin disclosed by Davey et al." *Id.*

In response to the Examiner's explanation, Applicants submitted a Declaration of Dr. David FitzGerald (hereafter, the "Declaration"). Dr. FitzGerald is not an inventor of the present invention. He is, however, an expert in the field of targeting toxins to cells, having worked in the field since 1982. Declaration, at ¶5. Moreover, Dr. FitzGerald is specifically knowledgeable about the attempts to develop targeted toxins of CD4-PE for use as therapeutic agents for HIV-1, as reflected by the fact that he was a co-author of the first study on the use of a CD4-PE conjugate to kill HIV-1 infected cells (Declaration, at ¶¶5-6), as well as six additional publications on the pre-clinical development of these conjugates (Declaration, at ¶7).

Dr. FitzGerald was provided with the position set forth in the April 2006 Action. He stated in his Declaration that the Action's position is factually incorrect and would have been known to be incorrect by a person of skill in the art as of the June 1998 filing date of the priority provisional application. Declaration, at ¶14. He stated that CD4 is a cell surface marker on the surface of certain cell types, such as B cells and macrophages, that is bound by the gp120 protein of HIV-1, and that CD4 does not bind to itself. *Id.* He stated that neither the CD4-PE40

immunotoxin of Ramachandran nor the sCD4-PE immunotoxin of Davey would bind cells expressing CD4, as stated by the Action. *Id.*

Dr. FitzGerald further stated that the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin of Ramachandran and the CD4-PE immunotoxin of Davey were intended to bind were cells infected by HIV-1, which express gp120 on their surface and that the immunotoxins recited in the claims under examination have the binding affinity of the 3B3 Fv, which binds to the gp120 protein. Thus, he stated that both (i) the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin of Ramachandran and the sCD4-PE immunotoxin of Davey, and (ii) the immunotoxins of the present invention, bind to cells expressing gp120, and not to cells expressing CD4. He stated that he and others in the art would therefore consider them to be analogous in terms of the cells they were intended to bind. Declaration, at ¶ 15.

## **2. The Final Action Shifts The Grounds of The Rejection, But The New Ground Does Not Cure the Defects In Analysis**

In the face of Dr. FitzGerald's Declaration, the present Final Action acknowledges that CD4-PE conjugates will bind to cells expressing gp120. Action, at page 5. Thus, the Final Action acknowledges that the Declaration overcomes the only rationale previously set forth to support the Examiner's assertions that that the Ramachandran and Davey CD4-PE conjugates are not analogous to the immunotoxins of the present invention. The Final Action, however, now asserts that the rejection was actually supported by a different rationale, and that under this new rationale, the CD4-PE conjugates are not analogous to the immunotoxins of the present invention. The Final Action then concludes that the CD4-PE 1994 clinical trial results are therefore less relevant than the *in vitro* results reported in the 1990 Matsushita reference. According to the Action:

"the rejection was maintained based on the fact that Matsushita's immunotoxin was shown to have efficacy. Since Matsushita's immunotoxin [] comprises the same components (i.e., a PE toxin and an anti-gp120 antibody) its demonstrated efficacy would have a greater impact on the skilled artisan than the failure of a[n] immunotoxin comprising differing components (i.e., a PE toxin and CD4)."

Final Action, at page 5.

Thus, the Final Action's rejection of the CD4-PE immunoconjugates as analogous to the immunotoxins of the invention is no longer that they do not bind to the same cells, as previously asserted, but that they are not comprised of the "same components." This rationale, however, cannot support the rejection, for at least four reasons.

**(a) "Same" vs. Different "Components "**

First, the Action fails to set forth any differences that might exist between CD4 and an anti-gp120 antibody as "components" that would lead persons of skill to disregard the failure of the CD4-PE immunoconjugates in the 1994 human clinical trials in favor of the *in vitro* experiments reported by Matsushita in 1990. For example, the Final Action fails to present any argument or evidence that there are any structural or functional differences between CD4 and the 0.5 $\beta$  antibody of Matsushita which would have led the person of skill at the time the invention was made to have expected that the Matsushita immunotoxins would have a better or different result in human clinical trials than did the CD4-PE immunoconjugates. Applicants respectfully note that it is the Examiner's burden to present evidence to overcome the presumption that an applicant is entitled to a patent unless the Examiner can demonstrate to the contrary. And, as will be shown below, the response of persons of skill in the art to the clinical trials was exactly to the contrary: they discontinued the development of anti-*Env* toxins, showing that they considered them analogous to one another.

**(b) Effect of Efficacy of Matsushita Immunotoxins In Motivating Practitioners**

Second, as noted, the Action cites as support for its assertion that the "demonstrated efficacy" of the Matsushita immunotoxin "would have a greater impact on the skilled artisan than the failure of a[n] immunotoxin comprising different components." Action, at page 5. The assertion that the Matsushita immunotoxin had efficacy that would have motivated the practitioner to modify it despite the results of the 1994 clinical trials however, was contradicted by Dr. FitzGerald in his Declaration. The "efficacy" that Matsushita discloses is

that "toxin-conjugated anti-gp120 monoclonal antibody selectively killed HIV-infected cells *in vitro*." Matsushita, at page 199, second paragraph. Dr. FitzGerald stated that he therefore considered the efficacy disclosed in Matsushita to be similar to that of the *in vitro* efficacy of CD4-PE in killing HIV-1 infected cells disclosed in his own publication in Nature two years earlier (Declaration, at ¶19, item (iii)). Dr. FitzGerald stated that this *in vitro* efficacy would not by itself give persons of skill any reason to expect a different result with the 0.5β antibody of Matsushita than that found in clinical trials of CD4-PE toxins. *Id.*

The Final Action neither specifically acknowledges Dr. FitzGerald's statements regarding these points, nor shows that they are incorrect or unworthy of credence. It merely ignores the declaration and repeats the unsupported assertions about the alleged motivation provided by the efficacy of the Matsushita immunotoxins as if Dr. FitzGerald's statements had not been presented. Proper examination practice, however, requires that declaration testimony by a person of skill be considered and that rejections be reconsidered in light of the all the evidence, including that presented by declaration.

**(c) The Evidence Shows That The Results Of The Clinical Trials Caused Persons Of Skill To Abandon The Approach of Anti-HIV Immunotoxins**

Third, the evidence of record contradicts the Examiner's position. Applicants presented two publications published in the open scientific literature stating the reaction of persons of skill to the 1994 failed clinical trials. The Berger et al. "Perspective" published in the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences ("PNAS") characterized the effect of the failure of the CD4-PE40 immunoconjugates on persons of skill as follows: "[t]he significant but reversible hepatotoxicity greatly diminished enthusiasm for CD4-PE40 in particular and for *Env*-targeted toxins in general." (Emphasis added). Since gp120 is a protein encoded by *Env*, the Berger et al. statement that practitioners were discouraged by the clinical trial results from using gp-120-targeted toxins includes the gp120-targeting Matsushita immunotoxin. The Final Action neither acknowledges the Berger et al. statement, nor explains why the statement is either incorrect or not entitled to weight and consideration. Indeed, there is no evidence on the record that the Examiner gave the Berger reference any consideration.

The authors of the Berger et al. PNAS Perspective are Dr. Pastan of the National Cancer Institute, Dr. Bernard Moss, chief of the Laboratory of Viral Diseases of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases ("NIAID"; the NIAID is the Government's lead agency in the fight against HIV/AIDS), and Dr. Berger, also of the NIAID. Moreover, as shown under the title and authors, the Perspective was edited by Dr. Anthony S. Fauci. Dr. Fauci has been the Director of the NIAID since 1984 and according to his biography on the NIAID website, has served as a key advisor to the White House and to the Department of Health and Human Services on developments regarding HIV. According to the website of the National Academy of Sciences, Dr. Pastan has been a member of the Academy since 1982, Dr. Moss has been a member since 1987, and Dr. Fauci has been a member since 1992.<sup>5</sup>

Thus, the Perspective was authored by two National Academy members and edited by a third, who is also the head of the nation's lead agency for combating HIV. It was written for, and published in, a major scientific journal almost immediately after the priority date of the subject application, and sets forth the characterization by these prominent scientists of the effect the failure of the CD4-PE clinical trials had on the efforts of persons in the field. That effect, according to their characterization virtually contemporaneous with the priority date of the present invention, was that the trials discouraged persons in the field from further development of *Env*-targeted toxins, such as the Matsushita anti-gp120 immunotoxin. This characterization was echoed by the Goldstein reference, which states, at page 921, right hand column, bottom paragraph, that in the wake of the reports of the 1994 clinical trial results, the approach of using anti-HIV antibodies as targeting moieties for anti-HIV immunotoxins was abandoned.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>5</sup> MPEP §2144.03 sets forth the conditions under which an Examiner can take official notice of information. The MPEP cites *In re Ahlert*, 424 F.2 1088, 165 USPQ 418 (CCPA 1970) as stating that Examiners' may take notice of facts beyond the record when the facts are "capable of such instant and unquestionable demonstration as to defy dispute." See, MPEP at page 2100-134. By parity of reasoning, the Board should take official notice of the facts set forth above, which are immediately ascertainable and not capable of dispute. The facts regarding the National Academy membership of Drs. Pastan, Moss, and Fauci are immediately ascertainable from the National Academy of Sciences website at <http://www.nasonline.org/site/Dir?sid=1011&view=basic&pg=srch>. The facts of the NIAID's lead role in the efforts of the U.S. Government to attack HIV/AIDS, of Dr. Fauci's position as Director of the NIAID, and of Dr. Fauci's role as a key advisor to the Government on developments regarding HIV are likewise immediately ascertainable and not capable of dispute. They can be found on the NIAID website, at <http://www3.niaid.nih.gov/about/directors/biography/director.htm>.

<sup>6</sup> Although the Berger and Goldstein articles appeared after the priority date of the application, the statements for which they are presented are characterizations of the state of the art after the CD4-PE40 trials and

Once again, the Final Action neither acknowledges the evidence presented by the Applicants, nor shows why it is either incorrect or unworthy of credence. The almost contemporaneous characterization in the scientific literature by the prominent authors of the Berger reference of the response of persons of skill to the results of the clinical trials, and the similar characterization made in the scientific literature two years later by the Goldstein authors, are evidence of how persons of skill actually responded to the 1994 clinical trial results. Applicants respectfully submit that this evidence of how persons of skill actually responded should control over the hindsight, and unsupported, view of the Examiner as to how persons of skill should have responded.

Finally, Applicants respectfully observe that both Berger and Goldstein are cited by the Applicants for their statements that, in the wake of the Ramachandran and Davey reports, the approach of using anti-HIV antibodies as targeting moieties for anti-HIV immunotoxins was abandoned. Both statements are retrospective characterizations what people of skill in the art thought following the publication of those reports, and neither relies on information that was not available at the time the invention was made.

**(d) The Final Action Speculation As To Why The Ramachandran and Davey Conjugates Had Hepatotoxicity Does Not Affect Their Nature As Analogous To The Matsushita Immunotoxins**

The Ramachandran and Davey CD4-PE immunoconjugates failed in clinical trials because they caused hepatotoxicity which was not seen in the pre-clinical testing. The hepatotoxicity limited the doses that could be administered to levels below that which had been shown to be effective in killing HIV-1 infected cells in vitro. *See, e.g., Berger, supra*, at page 11511, right hand column, bottom paragraph. In the April 2006 Office Action, the Examiner presented the following argument:

---

prior to publication of the articles. These retrospective statements do not introduce or rely on information that was not available prior to the priority date. Accordingly, as Applicants have previously argued, both references should be considered.



"since the CD4-PE immunotoxin would bind to any cell expressing CD4 on its surface, the hepato[to]xicity would logically be the result of said immunotoxin binding to healthy cells thereby disrupting some cellular or endocrine cascade present in man but not the mouse."

April 13, 2006 Action, at pages 6-7, bridging paragraph (emphasis added). Thus, the April 2006 Action expressly attributed the hepatotoxicity of the CD4-PE immunoconjugates to the alleged tendency of CD4 to bind to healthy CD4-expressing cells. In turn, the alleged tendency to bind healthy cells was cited as support for the Action's conclusion that the CD4-PE immunoconjugates were not analogous to the immunotoxins of the invention, which the Action considered not to have that tendency.

As noted in Section B. 1, above, Dr. FitzGerald's Declaration showed that the Action's premise that CD4 would bind to healthy cells was erroneous. Dr. FitzGerald declared that, to the contrary, CD4 would bind to cells expressing the HIV glycoprotein gp120, and that both CD4-PE and the Matsushita immunotoxins would bind the same cells.

In response, the Final Action rewrites the history of the rejection to assert that, contrary to the express statement in the April 2006 Action quoted above,

"the Examiner did not state that the hepato[to]xicity was due to the direct binding of the CD4-PE toxin to hepatocytes but that said toxin 'disrupted some cellular or endocrine cascade present in man but not in the mouse.'"

Final Action, at page 5. This statement is only true to the extent that the April 2006 Action stated that the toxicity was due to the direct binding of CD4-PE to "healthy cells," not to "hepatocytes" per se. It is also true, however, that the only reason the April 2006 Action gave for the hepatotoxicity seen in the CD4-PE clinical trials was that CD4-PE would bind to healthy cells and thereby initiate a cellular or endocrine cascade. It is also true that the April 2006 Action held that the Matsushita immunotoxins and the CD4-PE conjugates were not analogous precisely because of its premise that the Matsushita immunotoxins, in contrast to the CD4-PE conjugates, would not bind to healthy cells. Since Dr. FitzGerald's Declaration showed that the premise that CD4 would bind to healthy cells was completely wrong, and that both CD4-PE and the Matsushita immunotoxins would bind the same cells, the Declaration also destroyed the

premise on which the Action contended that the Matsushita immunotoxins and the CD4-PE conjugates were not analogous.

The Final Action now tries to have it both ways. On the one hand, the Final Action denies that the premise that CD4-PE would bind to healthy cells was the basis of the prior rejection. On the other hand, it still tries to assert that the hepatotoxicity of the CD4-PE conjugates was due to an alleged "cellular or endocrine cascade present in man but not in the mouse". This new basis for rejection suffers from several flaws, each of them fatal to the Action's assertion. First, absent the alleged difference of the two agents in binding healthy cells which underlay the April 2006 Action, there is no basis on which the current Final Action can explain why the person of skill would not have expected the same hepatotoxicity from the use of the Matsushita immunotoxins as was seen in the CD4-PE clinical trials. The lack of a basis for differentiating the two alone supports the conclusion that the CD4-PE conjugates and the Matsushita immunotoxins are analogous.

Second, the Examiner's assertion that there is "some cellular or endocrine cascade present in man but not in the mouse" is unsupported speculation cloaked in scientific-sounding language. The Examiner presents no evidence that such a cascade exists nor, that if one does, that it is the mechanism by which the CD4-PE conjugates had toxicity. Further, the Examiner does not show that, even if such a cascade does exist, one of skill would have expected the cascade to be absent with respect to the Matsushita immunotoxins, which persons of skill would recognize as binding to the same cells as the CD4-PE conjugates. As noted above, the only basis which the Examiner asserted for concluding that the hepatotoxicity of CD4-PE and the Matsushita immunotoxins would be different was that they allegedly bound to different cells, which was shown to be untrue by Dr. FitzGerald's Declaration.

Further, therapeutic agents do not proceed into human clinical trials based on pre-clinical studies in only one species. As set forth in the specification, at pages 35-36, bridging paragraph, pre-clinical studies on CD4-PE showed that it was "very well tolerated by monkeys" which could have relatively high doses "administered daily for 10 days without serious toxicity." This was another reason the very high toxicity seen in the human clinical trials was such a surprise. *Id.* Thus, the "cellular or endocrine cascade" hypothesized by the Examiner must

under his premise exist in man but not in non-human primates. Once again, however, the Examiner has not only failed to set forth any evidence that such a cascade exists, but also failed to set forth any evidence that, if the cascade did exist, the person of skill would have a reason to expect that the cascade would be activated by CD4-PE but not by the Matsushita immunotoxin.

Accordingly, even assuming that the revision of the ground of the rejection in the present Office Action has merit, the Examiner's speculation that some cascade is responsible for the hepatotoxicity of the CD4-PE conjugates does not. It is not only unsupported, but even if true, would fail to support the thesis that the CD4-PE conjugates are not analogous to the Matsushita immunotoxin.

### **C. The Final Action's Points Do Not Overcome The Showing Of Lack of Motivation To Modify The Matsushita Immunotoxins**

On pages 5-6 of the Final Action, the Examiner sets forth responses to various points into which he has divided the asserted grounds for holding the claims obvious over the Applicants rebuttals. While the substance of most of these points has been addressed in the discussions above, for the convenience of the Board in conducting its review, the arguments regarding each "point" is summarized below.<sup>7</sup>

#### **Point 2.**

Point 2 sets forth the Examiner's hypothesis that some cellular or endocrine cascade in humans but not mice was responsible for the hepatotoxicity seen in the CD4-PE clinical trials. As set forth in the preceding section, this hypothesis is unsupported speculation that ignores the fact that the CD4-PE conjugates were also tested in non-human primates. Further, even assuming such a cascade was indeed the explanation behind the hepatotoxicity, it would fail to explain why a person of skill would not expect the same cascade, and resulting hepatotoxicity, to result from the use of the Matsushita immunotoxin, which target and bind to the same cells as do the CD4-PE conjugates. And, as shown by the Berger and Goldstein references,

---

<sup>7</sup> Point 1 on page 5 of the Final Action does not need to be addressed since it is the Examiner's acknowledgement that CD4-PE binds cells expressing gp120, not cells expressing CD4, as he had previously contended.

the expectation in the art was that the same problems would arise, which is why the persons of skill discontinued developing anti-gp120 immunotoxins until the work embodied in the present application.

**Point 3.**

Point 3 argues that persons of skill would be motivated by the efficacy of the Matsushita immunotoxin to modify it to create the current invention, and would be undeterred by the failure of the CD4-PE conjugates because the claimed immunotoxins, unlike the CD4-PE conjugates, has the same components as the Matsushita immunotoxin. As set forth above, the efficacy of the Matsushita immunotoxin was in *in vitro* killing of HIV-infected cells, and is therefore the same efficacy as seen with CD4-PE. Further, it fails to explain why a person of skill would not expect the Matsushita immunotoxin to exhibit the hepatotoxicity seen with the CD4-PE conjugates, which target and bind to the same cells. Second, the argument that the "components" are not the same fails to identify any structural or functional differences between CD4 and an anti-gp120 antibody that would cause the person of skill to expect a difference in hepatotoxicity of the immunotoxin compared to that exhibited by the CD4-PE conjugates.

Third, the argument that the efficacy of the Matsushita immunotoxin would have a greater impact on practitioners than the failure of an immunotoxin with differing components ignores the evidence that exactly the reverse was true. The Berger and Goldstein references state that persons of skill in the art responded to the failure of the CD4-PE conjugates in clinical trials by abandoning the approach of *Env*-directed toxins. They also show that, despite the Examiner's continual refusal to concede that the CD4-PE conjugates and the Matsushita immunotoxin are analogous, persons of skill in the art considered *Env*-directed toxins to be analogous to the CD4-PE constructs. As noted above, the Final Action does not acknowledge the Applicants' contentions regarding the Berger reference or the Goldstein reference, and does not show that the characterizations of the response of persons of skill in the art to the clinical trials set forth in those references is either incorrect or false. The Applicants respectfully maintain that, where there is evidence of record as to how persons of skill actually responded to a clinical result, that

evidence must govern over an examiner's after the fact speculation as to how he thinks artisans should have responded.

**Point 4.**

Point 4 of the Final Action asserts that the type-specificity of Matsushita's antibody would provide motivation for the artisan to substitute it with the more broadly applicable antibody used in the claimed immunotoxins. This assertion again relies on the assumption that the CD4-PE conjugates are not analogous to the Matsushita immunotoxin, and thus would not have affected the motivation of the practitioner to continue the development of anti-gp120 antibodies. As stated above, however, the Berger and Goldstein references state that persons of skill in the art responded to the failure of the CD4-PE conjugates in clinical trials by abandoning the approach of *Env*-directed toxins. The references also show that, despite the Examiner's continual refusal to concede that the CD4-PE conjugates and the Matsushita immunotoxin are analogous, persons of skill in the art considered *Env*-directed toxins to be analogous to the CD4-PE constructs.

**Point 5.**

The April 2006 Action stated at page 6: "since the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin would bind to any cell expressing CD4 on its surface, the hepatotoxicity would logically be the result of said immunotoxin binding to healthy cells thereby disrupting some cellular or endocrine cascade present in man but not the mouse." In his Declaration, Dr. FitzGerald corrected the serious factual errors in the Action's position, including the following: (i) CD4 does not bind to itself, (ii) CD4-PE40 would not bind to any cell expressing CD4, and (iii) hepatocytes do not express CD4. Declaration, at ¶¶17-18. He also noted that the Matsushita immunotoxin and the CD4-PE40 were analogous in terms of the cells that they bind. Declaration, at ¶15. He therefore observed that there would be no reason to think that the hepatotoxicity observed in trials of CD4-PE immunotoxins would not also be found with respect to toxins targeted by the antibody of Matsushita. Declaration, at ¶19(ii). Point 5 of the Final Action responds to this portion of Dr. FitzGerald's Declaration with three statements, each of which will be considered in turn. .

First, the Action states that, "given that the components" (the targeting portion) "of the two immunotoxins are different, one cannot predict whether or not they would have the same effects *in vivo*." Final Action, at page 5. The Examiner has not, however, identified any structural or functional differences between the Matsushita antibody and CD4 which would lead one to expect a different response when the two are administered *in vivo*. And, the evidence of record is to the contrary. Both the Berger and the Goldstein references state that, in the wake of the 1994 clinical trial reports, the persons in the art, who were the best positioned to determine whether the clinical trial results could be extrapolated to other targeting moieties, discontinued developing *Env*-targeted toxins. Thus, persons of skill predicted that other anti-gp120 toxins would suffer from the same *in vivo* effect as that seen in the CD4-PE trials.

Next, the Action states at page 5 that, "as Applicant[s have] provided no proof substantiating their speculative assertion, it is deemed non-persuasive." This statement is best understood in context. As noted, Dr. FitzGerald was responding to an argument in the April 2006 Action that CD4-PE would bind to cells expressing CD4 and to hepatocytes, thereby initiating some unknown cascade, resulting in hepatotoxicity. Dr. FitzGerald's Declaration established that each of the Action's contentions was based on a serious misunderstanding of the science.

Dr. FitzGerald's statement that there would be no reason to think that the hepatotoxicity observed in trials of CD4-PE immunotoxins would not also be found with respect to toxins targeted by the antibody of Matsushita, Declaration, at ¶19(ii), is therefore not an unsupported assertion, as characterized by the Action, but a logical conclusion based on the correction of the scientific errors in the April 2006 Action's hypothesis. Dr. FitzGerald has been a researcher on targeting toxins to cells since 1982 (Declaration, at ¶5), and is a co-author of 7 papers in the scientific literature specifically on CD4-PE (*id.*, at ¶¶6 and 7). Accordingly, both his factual statements and his analysis are supported by deep familiarity with the attempts in the art to use immunotoxins and CD4-PE as therapeutic agents.

Finally, point 5 states that the basis of the rejection is whether the skilled artisan would have been motivated by the efficacy of the Matsushita immunotoxin to modify it, not whether the resulting immunotoxin would be successful in clinical trials. The Action seems to

take the position that practitioners in the art were engaged in abstract research to develop immunotoxins that would have no real world use. Contrary to the Action's premise, however, practitioners were trying to develop agents that would be useful in reducing HIV infection in patients with HIV. The Matsushita reference, for example, states that the killing effects seen by their immunotoxins *in vitro* suggested the "possible use of the immunotoxins to eliminate selectively HIV-producing cells *in vivo*." Matsushita, at page 199, bottom paragraph. As noted in Berger, however, the disappointing results of the CD4-PE trials caused greatly reduced enthusiasm for *Env*-targeted toxins in general. Berger, at pages 11511-11512, bridging paragraph. Since the Matsushita immunotoxin is an anti-gp120 toxin, and since gp120 is encoded by the *Env* gene of HIV, this statement evidences that the high hopes for anti-*Env* toxins like those of Matsushita immunotoxin were dashed by the CD4-PE results.

**Point 6.**

In point 6, the Action repeats its contention that the efficacy of the Matsushita immunotoxin, which has the same components as the immunotoxins of the invention, would have more impact on the practitioner than the failure of the CD4-PE conjugates. Action, at pages 5-6, bridging paragraph. As observed above, in Section B.2. (b), the assertion that the Matsushita immunotoxin had efficacy that would have motivated the practitioner to modify it despite the results of the 1994 clinical trials as contradicted by Dr. FitzGerald in his Declaration. Similarly, as set forth in Section I.B.2.(a), the Final Action fails to present any argument or evidence that there are any differences between CD4 and the 0.5 $\beta$  antibody of Matsushita which would have led the person of skill at the time the invention was made to have expected that the Matsushita immunotoxins would have a better or different result in human clinical trials than did the CD4-PE immunoconjugates.

The Action discounts Dr. FitzGerald's testimony by stating that, by his "logic, a failure of any given treatment modality would forever dissuade any study of not only that treatment modality, but any other that is similar to it. This is not the methodology that used by the artisans in the biomedical arts." Action, at page 6. This sets up a straw argument. When one treatment modality fails, artisans do try similar treatment modalities, when there is some rational

basis on which to think the results might be different. By the same token, when one treatment modality fails, they will not continue wasting resources on a failed approach in the absence of a rational basis to expect a different result.

As shown above, the CD4-PE conjugates and the Matsushita immunotoxin were considered analogous by persons of skill. Moreover, as evidenced by the Berger reference, practitioners were discouraged from further development of *Env*-targeted toxins, such as the Matsushita anti-gp120 immunotoxin. This characterization was echoed by the Goldstein reference, which states, at page 921, right hand column, bottom paragraph, that in the wake of the reports of the 1994 clinical trial results, the approach of using anti-HIV antibodies as targeting moieties for anti-HIV immunotoxins was abandoned. The Action's reliance on the position that the Matsushita immunotoxins would not have been considered analogous to the CD4-PE conjugates is not only based on scientific fallacy, but is also contrary to the evidence of record.

**Point 7.**

In point 7, the Examiner acknowledges that there remains a need for AIDS treatments, and states that this need would motivate practitioners to modify the Matsushita immunotoxin. The Examiner dismissed the evidence presented by the Applicants that the Matsushita immunotoxin had never in fact been brought into clinical trials (see, FitzGerald Declaration at ¶20) because the artisan would have been motivated to fine tune it. Action, at page 6.

The contention that artisans would have been motivated to "fine tune" the Matsushita antibody ignores, however, evidence that was already of record in this proceeding. The consideration of long felt need as a secondary consideration of non-obviousness, as set forth by the Supreme Court in *Graham v. John Deere*, 383 U.S. 1, 148 USPQ 459 (1966), was brought to the Examiner's attention in Applicants' Amendment dated September 19, 2005. Applicants there presented PubMed searches for references on anti-gp120 immunotoxins and on anti-HIV immunotoxins that were dated between the publication of Matsushita in 1990 and the priority date of the present application in 1998. The searches uncovered no references that appeared



from their titles to relate to the making or testing of anti-gp120 immunotoxins. In fact, from the titles, the Matsushita reference was the only reference that actually appeared to relate to making an anti-gp120 immunotoxin. For the Board's convenience, the searches presented in 2005 are attached as Exhibits.

In light of this evidence, Applicants submitted that the fact that there did not appear to be a single publication on the development of an anti-gp120 immunotoxin in the approximately eight years between the publication of Matsushita and the priority date of the present application, despite the long felt need to develop anti-HIV therapeutics and the failure of CD4-PE40 immunotoxin, was clear evidence that persons of skill were not motivated by Matsushita, alone or in combination with Barbas and Pastan, to develop an anti-gp120 immunotoxin.

The Examiner has never addressed this evidence. In the Advisory Action of October 12, 2005, he simply maintained that the Matsushita immunotoxin met the long felt need for AIDS treatments, without explanation or analysis of the search results. Advisory Action, at page 6. The present Action does not maintain that Matsushita met the long felt need for a therapeutic, but argues that it provided motivation while ignoring the effect on that motivation of the results of the CD4-PE clinical trials. Applicants respectfully remind the Board that MPEP 2141 requires the examining corps to evaluate the evidence of secondary considerations of non-obviousness in every case. Applicants respectfully maintain that this required evaluation has not been made in this case.

#### **Point 8**

Point 8 does not present an argument per se but merely extends aspects of the rejections noted above to particular claims, such as those drawn to kits. Accordingly, it does not provide a separate ground of rejection and is adequately addressed by the comments made above.

### **III. The Rejection for Alleged Indefiniteness**

Claims 1-7, 9, 11, 52, 55, 57, 68-75 and 77 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. §112, second paragraph, as allegedly indefinite. According to the Action, the independent claims are

vague and indefinite by the phrase "which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2". The Action maintains that it is unclear whether "both the VH and VL chains are encompassed by SEQ ID NO.:2 or both the VH and VL [chains] are individually encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2." Applicants traverse.

As an initial matter, the rejection itself is a bit unclear. It appears, however, that the concern it is trying to articulate is that the claim language could be read to mean that SEQ ID NO.:2 encodes the VH and the VL chain as a linear construct or as two separate chains. With respect, however, these alternative readings are not permissible.

The Board's attention is respectfully drawn to MPEP § 2173.02. Section 2173.02 instructs the Examining Corps that claim language "must be analyzed, not in a vacuum but in light of: (A) The content of the particular application disclosure; (B) The teachings of the prior art; and (C) The claim interpretation that would be given by one possessing the ordinary level skill in the pertinent art at the time the invention was made." (Emphasis added). Sequence listings are published with the patent specification and are part of the patent application disclosure. Persons of skill claim reviewing the sequence listing of the subject application disclosure will see the following description for SEQ ID NO.:2: "Description of Artificial Sequence: 3B3V-H(Gly-4Ser)-3V-L nucleotide sequence". See, Sequence Listing dated December 5, 2002. Accordingly, the content of the application disclosure informs the person of skill in the art that SEQ ID NO.:2 is a nucleotide sequence encoding first the 3B3 VH chain, a linker, and then the 3B3 VL chain. Any person of skill concerned about the claim language would turn to the end of the patent, see the sequence description for SEQ ID NO.:2, and immediately understand exactly what the sequence encodes. Applicants also respectfully note that the persons of skill in this art are typically Ph.D. level scientists who can be presumed to understand the straightforward description set forth in the sequence listing.

Compliance with §112, second paragraph does not require that the language set forth in a claim be either perfect or the language an Examiner would have preferred. MPEP §2173.02 directs the examining corps that claims should be allowed which "define the patentable subject matter with a reasonable degree of particularity and definiteness. Some latitude . . .

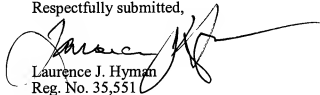
should be permitted even though the claim language is not as precise as the examiner might desire." (Emphasis in original).

In short, the alternative readings posed by the Action are not permissible in light of the application disclosure. And, even if the language of the claim is not as precise as the examiner would have liked, §112, second paragraph only requires, in the words of the MPEP, a "reasonable degree of particularity and definiteness", which is clearly met here. The Board should reverse the rejection.

#### **8. CONCLUSION**

For these reasons, it is respectfully submitted that the rejection should be reversed.

Respectfully submitted,



Laurence J. Hyman  
Reg. No. 35,551

TOWNSEND and TOWNSEND and CREW LLP  
Two Embarcadero Center, Eighth Floor  
San Francisco, California 94111-3834  
Tel: 650-326-2400  
Fax: 650-326-2422  
61181094 v1

## **9. CLAIMS APPENDIX**

1. (Previously presented) An immunotoxin comprising a cytotoxin attached to an anti-gp120 antibody having the binding specificity to the CD4 binding site of gp120 of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2) and a minimum binding affinity to gp-120 of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2), wherein said immunotoxin specifically binds to and kills mammalian cells infected with HIV-1.

2. (Previously presented) The immunotoxin of claim 1, wherein said cytotoxin is selected from the group consisting of ricin, abrin, a modified diphtheria toxin, and a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

3. (Previously presented) The immunotoxin of claim 2, wherein said cytotoxin is a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

4. (Previously presented) The immunotoxin of claim 3, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is selected from the group consisting of PE38, PE40, PE38KDEL (KDEL = SEQ ID NO:9), and PE38REDL (REDEL = SEQ ID NO:10).

5. (Previously presented) The immunotoxin of claim 4, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is PE38.

6. (Original) The immunotoxin of claim 1, wherein said antibody is selected from the group consisting of a single-chain Fv (scFv), a single-chain Fab (scFab), and a disulfide stabilized Fv (dsFv).

7. (Original) The immunotoxin of claim 6, wherein said antibody is a recombinantly expressed single-chain Fv.

8. Canceled

9. (Original) The immunotoxin of claim 1, wherein said immunotoxin is a fusion protein.

10. Canceled

11. (Original) The immunotoxin of claim 1, wherein said immunotoxin is suspended or dissolved in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

12-18. Canceled.

19. (Withdrawn-previously presented) A single chain Fv antibody having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

20. (Withdrawn- previously presented) The antibody of claim 19, wherein said antibody has the amino acid sequence of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2) or conservative substitutions thereof.

21. (Withdrawn- previously presented) The antibody of claim 20, wherein said antibody is 3B3(Fv) Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

22. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A nucleic acid that encodes a single chain Fv antibody having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

23. (Withdrawn- previously presented) The nucleic acid of claim 22, wherein said antibody has the amino acid sequence of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2) or conservative substitutions thereof.

24. (Withdrawn- previously presented) The nucleic acid of claim 20, wherein said nucleic acid encodes the 3B3 antibody (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

25-51. Canceled.

52. (Previously presented) A kit for killing cells that display a gp120 protein, said kit comprising a container containing an immunotoxin comprising a cytotoxin attached to an anti-gp120 antibody having the binding specificity to the CD4 binding site of gp120 of 3B3 Fv (SEQ ID NO:1) and a minimum binding affinity to gp-120 of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2), wherein said immunotoxin specifically binds to and kills mammalian cells infected with HIV-1.

53. (Previously presented) The kit of claim 52, wherein said cytotoxin is selected from the group consisting of ricin, abrin, a modified diphtheria toxin, and a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

54. (Previously presented) The kit of claim 53, wherein said cytotoxin is a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

55. (Previously presented) The kit of claim 53, wherein said immunotoxin is 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2) attached to a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

56. Canceled.

57. (Previously presented) An immunotoxin of claim 1, wherein said immunotoxin is a disulfide-stabilized ("ds") FV.

58. Canceled

59. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A nucleic acid that encodes a single chain fusion protein, said nucleic acid comprising:

(a) a nucleic acid sequence that encodes a single-chain antibody having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded

by SEQ ID NO.:2); and

(b) a nucleic acid sequence that encodes a cytotoxin.

60. (Withdrawn- Previously presented) A nucleic acid of claim 59, wherein said cytotoxin is selected from the group consisting of ricin, abrin, a modified diphtheria toxin, and a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

61. (Withdrawn- Previously presented) A nucleic acid of claim 59, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is selected from the group consisting of PE38, PE40, PE38KDEL (KDEL = SEQ ID NO:9), and PE38REDL (RDEL = SEQ ID NO:10).

62. (Withdrawn- Previously presented) A nucleic acid of claim 61, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is PE38.

63. (Withdrawn) A nucleic acid of claim 59, wherein said antibody is selected from the group consisting of a single-chain Fv (scFv), a single-chain Fab (scFab), and a disulfide stabilized Fv (dsFv).

64. (Withdrawn) A nucleic acid of claim 63, wherein said antibody is a recombinantly expressed single chain Fv.

65. (Withdrawn) A nucleic acid of claim 63, wherein said antibody is a dsFv.

66-67. Canceled

68. (Previously presented) A composition, said composition comprising:  
a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient; and  
an immunotoxin comprising a cytotoxin attached to an anti-gp120 antibody having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

69. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 68, wherein said cytotoxin is selected from the group consisting of ricin, abrin, a modified diphtheria toxin, and a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

70. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 69, in which said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is selected from the group consisting of PE38, PE40, PE38KDEL (KDEL = SEQ ID NO:9), and PE38REDL (RDEL = SEQ ID NO:10).

71. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 70, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is PE38.

72. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 68, wherein said antibody is selected from the group consisting of a single-chain Fv (scFv), a single-chain Fab (scFab), and a disulfide stabilized Fv (dsFv).

73. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 72, wherein said antibody is a recombinantly expressed single-chain Fv.

74. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 73, wherein said antibody is 3B3(Fv) Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

75. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 72, wherein said antibody is a dsFv.

76. Canceled.

77. (Previously presented) A composition of claim 72, wherein said immunotoxin is a fusion protein.

78. Canceled.



79. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of killing or inhibiting the growth of a cell displaying a gp120 protein or fragment thereof, said method comprising contacting said cell with an immunotoxin comprising a cytotoxin attached to an anti-gp120 antibody having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

80. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of claim 79, wherein said cytotoxin is selected from the group consisting of ricin, abrin, a modified diphtheria toxin, and a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

81. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of claim 80, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is selected from the group consisting of PE38, PE40, PE38KDEL (KDEL = SEQ ID NO:9), and PE38REDL (RDEL = SEQ ID NO:10).

82. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of claim 81, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is PE38.

83. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 79, wherein said antibody is selected from the group consisting of a single-chain Fv (scFv), a single-chain Fab (scFab), and a disulfide stabilized Fv (dsFv).

84. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 83, wherein said antibody is a recombinantly expressed single-chain Fv.

85. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 83, wherein said antibody is 3B3(Fv).

86. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 83, wherein said antibody is a dsFv.

87. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 83, wherein said antibody is 3B3(dsFv).

88. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 83, wherein said immunotoxin is a fusion protein.

89. Canceled

90. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of killing or inhibiting the growth of cells bearing gp120 protein or fragment thereof, said method comprising administering to an organism containing said cells a composition comprising:

a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient; and

an immunotoxin comprising a cytotoxin attached to an anti-gp120 antibody having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv (which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2) and minimum affinity of 3B3 Fv (~~SEQ ID NO.:1~~ which 3B3 Fv consists of a VH chain and a VL chain as encoded by SEQ ID NO.:2).

91. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of claim 90, wherein said cytotoxin is selected from the group consisting of ricin, abrin, a modified diphtheria toxin, and a modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A.

92. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of claim 91, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is selected from the group consisting of PE38, PE40, PE38KDEL (KDEL = SEQ ID NO:9), and PE38REDL (RDEL = SEQ ID NO:10).

93. (Withdrawn- previously presented) A method of claim 91, wherein said modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is PE38.

94. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 90, wherein said antibody is selected from the group consisting of a single-chain Fv (scFv), a single-chain Fab (scFab), and a disulfide stabilized Fv (dsFv).

95. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 94, wherein said antibody is a recombinantly expressed single-chain Fv.

96. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 94, wherein said antibody is 3B3(Fv).

97. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 94, wherein said antibody is a dsFv.

98. Canceled.

99. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 90, wherein said immunotoxin is a fusion protein.

100. Canceled.

101. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 90, further comprising administering to said organism a protease inhibitor.

102. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 90, further comprising administering to said organism a reverse transcriptase inhibitor.

103. (Withdrawn) A method of claim 90, further comprising administering to said organism both a protease inhibitor and a reverse transcriptase inhibitor and then withdrawing the reverse transcriptase inhibitor while maintaining protease inhibitor dosing during administration of said composition.

## **10. EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

### **I. Evidence relied on by the Examiner with respect to the appealed grounds of rejection:**

- A. Matsushita et al., Aids Research Human Retroviruses 6(2):193-203 (1990)
- B. Barbas, Proc Natl Acad Sci 91:3809-3813 (1994)
- C. Pastan, U.S. Patent No. 5,458,878

### **II. Evidence relied on by Appellants:**

- A. Abstract of Ramachandran et al., J. Infect Dis 170:1009-13 (1994)
- B. Abstract of Davey et al., J. Infect Dis 170:1180-8 (1994)
- C. Berger, Moss and Pastan, Proc Natl Acad Sci 95:1151-11513 (1998)
- D. Goldstein et al., J Infectious Diseases 181:921-6 (2000)
- E. Declaration of Dr. David J. FitzGerald - acknowledged by the Examiner on page 2 of Final Action dated May 3, 2007, as having been considered.

Exhibit 1 Curriculum Vitae of Dr. David J. FitzGerald

Exhibit 2 Abstract of Chaudhary et al., Nature 335(6188):369-72 (1988)

Exhibit 3 Abstract of Berger et al., Proc Natl Acad Sci 86(23):9539-43 (1989)

Exhibit 4 Abstract of Ashorn et al., Proc Natl Acad Sci 87(220):8889-93 (1990)

Exhibit 5 Abstract of Berger et al. AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses, 6(6):795-804 (1990)

Exhibit 6 Abstract of Kennedy et al., J Leukoc Biol (epub ahead of print, printout from Pubmed dated October 8, 2006)

- F. Printouts of Pubmed searches for references to anti-gp120 immunotoxins and anti-HIV immunotoxins appearing from 1990 to 1998

**11. RELATED PROCEEDINGS APPENDIX**

Not applicable.

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART I**

### **EXHIBIT A**

## Selective Killing of HIV-Infected Cells by Anti-gp120 Immunotoxins

SHUZO MATSUSHITA,<sup>1</sup> ATSUSHI KOITO,<sup>2</sup> YOSUKE MAEDA,<sup>2</sup>  
TOSHIO HATTORI,<sup>2</sup> and KIYOSHI TAKATSUKI<sup>1,2</sup>

### ABSTRACT

Either ricin A chain (RAC) or *Pseudomonas* exotoxin (PE) was conjugated with a murine monoclonal antibody (0.5 $\beta$ ) directed against an external envelope glycoprotein (gp120) of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Effects of the immunotoxins produced against infected cells were evaluated. Selective inhibition of the proliferation and killing of chronically HIV infected cells were observed in the presence of the immunotoxins. To determine the feasibility of the immunotoxins against the infected cells in seropositive subjects, we attempted to detect gp120-bearing cells in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBM) by cytofluorography. Cells in the monocyte/macrophage region of 2 of 10 PBM samples from HIV-infected individuals were found to react with 0.5 $\beta$  (18.1% and 12.8%). Furthermore, the cell population which was reactive with 0.5 $\beta$  was also susceptible to RAC conjugated with 0.5 $\beta$ . These results suggest that the strategy of using anti-gp120 immunotoxin to eliminate HIV-infected cells may be feasible in infected individuals.

### INTRODUCTION

HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS TYPE 1 (HIV-1) is a human retrovirus which is the etiologic agent for the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and related disorders.<sup>1,2</sup> Some HIV-infected T cells and macrophages appear to be resistant to the cytopathic effect of the virus<sup>3-5</sup> and continue to produce a large quantity of virions in vivo.<sup>6,7</sup>

Immune responses against HIV-1 such as antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL), and antibody-dependent complement-mediated cytotoxicity (ACC) have been considered to be important for eliminating HIV-infected cells in the body. HIV-specific CTL and ADCC were demonstrated in seropositive cases.<sup>7-9</sup> On the other hand, no ACC activity was detected in many antibody-positive patients' sera.<sup>10</sup> HIV-neutralizing antibodies were also detected in seropositive individuals<sup>11,12</sup> and in some cases, were associated with better clinical courses.<sup>13,14</sup> In

<sup>1</sup>The Blood Transfusion Service and <sup>2</sup>The Second Division of Internal Medicine, Kumamoto University Medical School, Kumamoto, Japan.

experimental animals, neutralizing antibodies,<sup>15-17</sup> CTL<sup>18</sup> ADCC<sup>19</sup> and ACC<sup>10</sup> against HIV were inducible by immunization of purified or recombinant external envelope glycoprotein (gp120) of HIV. However, it still remains to be elucidated whether an HIV vaccination with already infected people are effective or not.<sup>20</sup>

As an alternative strategy we investigated the possibilities of eliminating the HIV-infected cells by a passive immunotherapy using immunotoxins directed against gp120 of HIV. Immunotoxins are artificially constructed hybrid molecules in which a toxic compound attaches to an antibody that specifically recognizes target cells.<sup>21</sup> We have recently reported a monoclonal antibody (0.5 $\beta$ ) that was reactive against gp120 of HIV and was capable of neutralizing cell-free and cell-associated virus infection in an isolate-specific fashion.<sup>22</sup> The epitope recognized by 0.5 $\beta$  was mapped to a 24 amino acid segment which was within a highly variable region of gp120. We have constructed anti-gp120 immunotoxins by conjugating 0.5 $\beta$  with toxins. We now report that anti-gp120 immunotoxins selectively eliminate HIV-infected cells not only in chronically HIV-infected cell lines, but also in freshly isolated peripheral blood mononuclear cell (PBM) *in vitro*.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### *Cells and viruses*

Uninfected H9 and CEM cells, H9 cells chronically infected with human T-lymphotropic virus type IIIB (H9/IIIB), and CEM cells chronically infected with lymphadenopathy-associated virus type-1 (CEM/LAV-1) have been described.<sup>1,2</sup> H9 and H9/IIIB cells and CEM/LAV-1 cells were kindly provided by Drs. R.C. Gallo and L. Montagnier, respectively. A CEM/LAV-1 subline, over 80% of them stably expressed gp120 was used for the study. Cells were maintained in RPMI 1640 medium (GIBCO) with 20% fetal calf serum (FCS) and antibiotics (complete medium).

### *Antibody and immunotoxins*

A type-specific neutralizing monoclonal antibody (0.5 $\beta$ ) against the exterior envelope protein (gp120) of HIV<sup>22</sup> was used to prepare anti-gp120 immunotoxins. Ion-exchange chromatography was used to purify 0.5 $\beta$ . Purified ricin A chain (RAC) was purchased from E-Y Laboratories (San Mateo, CA). Next, 0.5 $\beta$  antibody was cross-linked to RAC using the heterobifunctional reagent SPDP [N-succinimidyl 3-(2-pyridyldithio) propionate, (SPDP) Pharmacia] as described by Krolick et al.<sup>23</sup> Briefly, purified 0.5 $\beta$  in phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) (0.01 M sodium phosphate, pH 7.4, containing 0.15 M NaCl) were treated with 15-fold molar excess of SPDP for 30 min at room temperature to introduce 2-pyridyl disulfide groups into the IgG molecule. The modified and dialyzed proteins were then mixed with three-fold molar excess of the purified, reduced RAC in PBS and incubated at 4°C for 15 h. The 0.5 $\beta$ -RAC conjugates (RAC- $\beta$ ) were separated from unbound RAC by gel filtration on a Sephacryl S-200 column. A high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) analysis revealed that the purified immunotoxin contained one ricin moiety per antibody. Slight contamination of free antibody was detected, but no free ricin was detected in the preparation (data not shown). The 0.5 $\beta$  antibody was also conjugated with *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A (PE) (Seikagaku Kogyo, Tokyo, Japan) by a method similar to that described for RAC- $\beta$  except that PE was first conjugated with SPDP, reduced, and conjugated with 0.5 $\beta$  pretreated with SPDP. The 0.5 $\beta$ -PE conjugates (PE- $\beta$ ) were purified as described above.

### *Cytotoxicity assay for the immunotoxins against infected cell line*

Cytotoxic activity of the immunotoxins was assessed by a cell killing assay. A half million of H9/IIIB, H9, CEM/LAV-1, or CEM cells were cultured in the presence or absence of various concentrations of the immunotoxins and incubated at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub>-containing humidified air. Viable cell



numbers were counted every 12 h in a hemocytometer under the microscope by trypan blue dye exclusion method. In the same experiment, H9/IIIB cells, which were cultured in the presence or absence of various concentrations of the immunotoxins, were collected every 12 h, washed twice with PBS, and fixed on glass slides. HIV p24 antigen-positive cells were detected by anti-p24 monoclonal antibody as previously described.<sup>34</sup>

### *Peptide and ELISA*

The 33 amino acid peptide ABJ709 (Pro-Asn-Asn-Asn-Thr-Arg- Lys-Ser-Ile-Arg-Ile-Gln-Arg-Gly-Pro-Gly-Arg-Ala-Phe-Val-Thr-Ile-Gly-Lys-Ile-Gly-Asn-Met-Arg-Gln-Ala-His-Cys) was synthesized by the solid-phase method on an automated peptide synthesizer (Applied Biosystems 430A) by Applied Biosystems Japan. Serum samples were obtained from asymptomatic HIV carriers and patients with AIDS-related complex (ARC), human T-cell leukemia virus type I (HTLV-I) carriers, and seronegative controls. Binding of patients' sera against the peptide was assessed by ELISA. Flexible assay plates (Falcon 3912, Becton Dickinson) were coated with or without ABJ709 peptide at a concentration of 3 µg/ml in PBS (pH 7.2) overnight. After blocking with 2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) containing PBS and washing with PBS, 100 µl of 1:2000 diluted serum samples were reacted for 2 h followed by incubation with alkaline phosphatase (ALP) conjugated anti-human IgG and substrate (both from Sigma).

An inhibition ELISA that detected antibodies in the patients' serum that competed in binding of 0.5β to ABJ 709 was developed as follows. Microtiter plates were coated with 3 µg/ml of ABJ709 peptide. After blocking with 2% BSA-PBS, aliquots (50 µl) of serially diluted serum samples were added with 50 µl of 0.5β antibody (3 µg/ml). The competition in the binding of 0.5β with human serum samples was detected by ALP-conjugated anti-mouse IgG and substrate.

### *Flow cytometric analysis*

Reactivities of 0.5β antibody against fresh peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBM) from seropositive individuals were analyzed by flow cytometry. PBM cells were obtained by Ficoll-Conray density gradient centrifugation and incubated 1 h with normal human IgG (200 µg/ml) to saturate Fc receptors on the cell membrane. PBM cells were then pelleted and reacted with 0.5β or control IgG1 antibody followed by staining with fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)-conjugated F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragment of anti-mouse IgG antibody (Sigma), and analyzed by laser flow cytometry (FACSTAR, Becton Dickinson) as previously described.<sup>22</sup>

### *Cytotoxicity assay for the immunotoxin against fresh PBM cells*

PBM cells (10<sup>6</sup>) from an ARC patient were resuspended in the complete medium containing normal human IgG (200 µg/ml) and cultured in the presence of the following reagents: samples 1 and 2; MOPC 21 (10 µg/ml), sample 3; 0.5β (10 µg/ml), sample 4; RAC-β (1 µg/ml). After 36 h, cultivation at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> containing incubator, cells in each sample were collected, pelleted, and reacted with either MOPC 21 (sample 1) or 0.5β (samples 2,3,4). The cells were further stained with FITC-conjugated F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragment of anti-mouse IgG antibody (Sigma) and analyzed by laser flow cytometry as described.

## RESULTS

Ricin A chain (RAC) enzyme binds to the 60S ribosomal subunit at or near the elongation factor-2 binding site, causing inhibition of protein synthesis and eventually, cell death. One molecule of RAC in the cytosol is sufficient to kill a cell.<sup>21</sup> The 0.5β antibody was conjugated with RAC (RAC-β) and the toxic activity against H9/IIIB cells or uninfected H9 cells by RAC-β was tested. When H9/IIIB

cells were exposed to RAC- $\beta$ , the growth of the H9/IIIB cells was inhibited within a day in culture followed by cell death (Fig. 1). By contrast, when uninfected H9 cells were cultured in the presence of RAC- $\beta$ , no inhibition in growth was detected except for a slight suppression in growth on the second day in culture at the highest concentration of RAC- $\beta$ . The effect of RAC- $\beta$  on the expression of HIV p24 gag antigen in H9/IIIB cells was also studied by indirect immunofluorescence. The percentages of p24-positive cells decreased with time in culture when the cells were cultured with RAC- $\beta$  (Fig. 2). The result suggests that RAC- $\beta$  selectively killed p24-positive cells in the H9/IIIB cell line. A small fraction of p24-positive cells that survived in the presence of RAC- $\beta$  could be explained by the fact that these cells were the HIV-infected but low or nonproducer cells of the virus or the cells infected with defective viruses. However, these surviving fractions, were also susceptible to RAC- $\beta$ , and could not be maintained longer than 10 days in the presence of RAC- $\beta$ .

Next, 0.5 $\beta$  was conjugated with *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A (PE- $\beta$ ). PE is also an inhibitor of ribosomal protein synthesis.<sup>21</sup> PE- $\beta$  inhibited the proliferation of lymphadenopathy-associated virus type 1-(LAV-1) infected subline of CEM cells (Fig. 3). No inhibition in growth was observed when uninfected CEM cells were exposed to PE- $\beta$ .

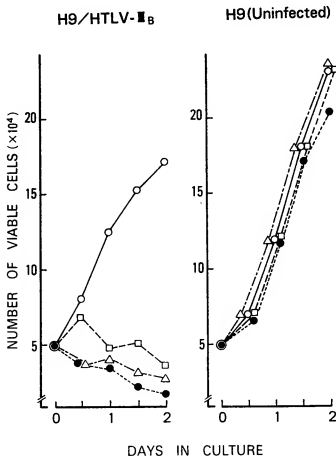


FIG. 1. Selective inhibition of the proliferation of HTLV-III-B-infected H9 cells (H9/IIIB) by RAC- $\beta$ . The 0.5 $\beta$  antibody was conjugated with ricin A chain (RAC- $\beta$ ) by SPDP. H9/IIIB cells or uninfected H9 cells were cultured in the presence of RAC- $\beta$  at concentrations of 4  $\mu$ g/ml ( $\bullet$ ), 0.8  $\mu$ g/ml ( $\Delta$ ), and 0.16  $\mu$ g/ml ( $\square$ ). Control culture with no antibody is also shown ( $\circ$ ). Total viable cells were counted after 12, 24, 36, and 48 h in culture. When unconjugated 0.5 $\beta$  was added to H9/IIIB cells, no differences in the growth of the cells were observed (not shown). Variabilities in cell number determination is  $\pm 10\%$  of the value shown.

# ANTI-GP120 IMMUNOTOXIN AGAINST HIV-INFECTION

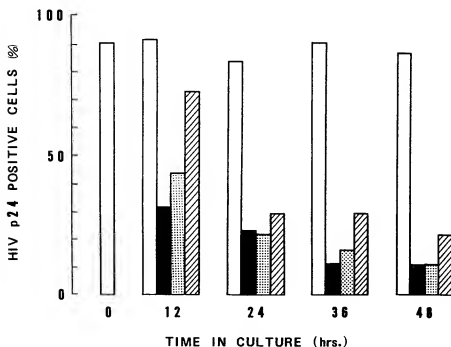


FIG. 2. Selective reduction of the HIV P24-positive cells by RAC- $\beta$ . H9/IIIB cells were cultured in the absence (□) or presence of RAC- $\beta$  as described in the legend to Fig. 1 at concentrations of 4  $\mu$ g/ml (■), 0.8  $\mu$ g/ml (▤), and 0.16  $\mu$ g/ml (▨).

Because these toxins are only active when they are internalized by receptor-mediated endocytosis, we investigated surface modulation of gp120 by 0.5 $\beta$ . H9/IIIB cells were cultured for 24 or 48 h, with 10  $\mu$ g/ml of 0.5 $\beta$  or control antibody, washed, and reacted with 0.5 $\beta$  followed by staining with fluorescein isothiocyanate-conjugated anti-mouse IgG antibody and analyzed by laser flow cytometry. However, no apparent decrease or enhancement in the expression of gp120 on the surface of infected cells was observed despite the presence of 0.5 $\beta$  (data not shown). Taken together, these results, suggest that a part of gp120–0.5 $\beta$  complex may be internalized without apparent up or down modulation of gp120 on the surface of infected cells.

To estimate the feasibility of the 0.5 $\beta$  immunotoxins, we have analyzed humoral immune response to the epitope recognized by 0.5 $\beta$ . A 33 amino acid sequence peptide ABJ709 that contained 0.5 $\beta$  reacting epitope<sup>22</sup> was synthesized and used for the study. Reactivity of diluted sera from HIV asymptomatic carrier (AC) or AIDS-related complex (ARC) were tested by enzyme immunoassay. As shown in Figure 4A, reactivity of the sera with the peptide varies from highly positive to nonreactive in HIV-positive individuals while no reactivity was noted in human T-cell leukemia virus type-I carriers and normal individuals. This result is consistent with the results reported by Palker et al., describing that 21% of seropositive subjects had positive reactivity to a synthetic peptide that partially overlapped with ABJ709.<sup>25</sup> To detect 0.5 $\beta$  epitope specific binding activity, an inhibition assay was employed (Fig. 4B). Of 18 seropositive individuals, 3 had a natural antibody that inhibited the binding of 0.5 $\beta$  to ABJ709. It is worth noting that serum antibodies from these individuals did not show high binding activities to ABJ709 (the actual absorbances were 0.62, 0.28 and 0.17). In view of the finer epitope mapping of 0.5 $\beta$ ,<sup>22,26</sup> it is conceivable that other epitopes would be available on ABJ709 to seropositive patients' serum antibodies without interference by 0.5 $\beta$ . These results suggest that at least some seropositive individuals actually produced type-specific antibody and may imply infection of the HTLV-III type viruses.

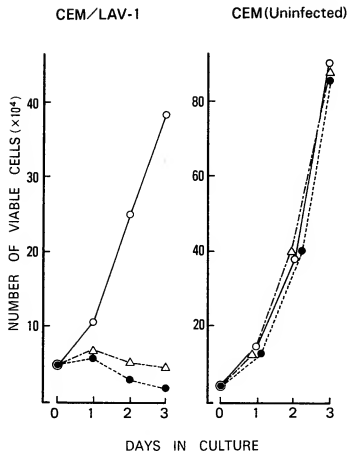


FIG. 3. Selective inhibition of the proliferation of LAV-1-infected CEM subline (CEM/LAV-1) by PE- $\beta$ . The percent gp120 positivity of CEM/LAV-1 subline was 84% as analyzed by cell sorter using 0.5 $\beta$  (data not shown). CEM/LAV-1 or uninfected CEM cells were cultured in the absence (○) or presence of 1  $\mu$ g/ml (●), 0.1  $\mu$ g/ml (△) of PE- $\beta$ .

Finally, we attempted to detect HIV-bearing cells in freshly isolated peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBM) by 0.5 $\beta$ . When PBM cells were analyzed by laser flow cytometry, two discrete populations of cells were identified in the cytogram. One of them consists mainly of lymphocytes (region A) and the other of monocytes/macrophages (region B). As summarized in Table 1, when the cells in the B region were examined, binding of 0.5 $\beta$  was detected in 2 of 10 seropositive individuals. No reactivity of 0.5 $\beta$  was observed for the cells in the A region in any of the samples tested. Because the number of cells in the monocyte/macrophage region was about 10% of the whole PBM, the percent positive cells in the PBM population may be 1.8% for Patient 1 and 1.28% for Patient 2.

To investigate whether RAC- $\beta$  was also effective against patients' infected cells, PBM were cultured with RAC- $\beta$  and analyzed by flow cytometry using 0.5 $\beta$ . The number of cells in macrophage region (B region) appeared to be decreased, and the reactivity of 0.5 $\beta$  was suppressed after 36 h cultivation with RAC- $\beta$  (Fig. 5). The percent positive cells in each population in Figure 5 region B was calculated as 3.8% for the background staining, 21% for 0.5 $\beta$ -positive cells, and 4.7% for the 0.5 $\beta$ -positive cells after RAC- $\beta$  treatment. The percentages of 0.5 $\beta$ -positive cells reduced from 17.2% (21–3.8%) to 0.9% (4.7–3.8%) when cells were exposed to RAC- $\beta$ . Although it is possible that 0.5 $\beta$ -positive cells may be uninfected cells to which virions attached, RAC- $\beta$  eliminated gp120-bearing cells in PBM from a patient with ARC in vitro.

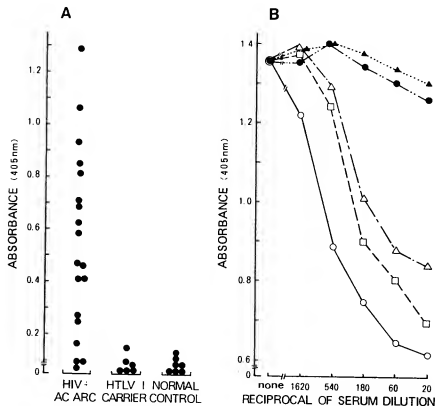


FIG. 4. (A) Reactivity of ARC and AC serum antibodies to a synthetic peptide ABJ709 which contains 0.5 $\beta$  epitope. Binding activity of serum IgG was detected by ELISA. Data were presented by subtraction of background absorbance which was detected as binding to the wells coated with PBS alone from absorbance of antigen-coated wells. Sera from HTLV-I carrier and normal individuals were used as controls. (B) Detection of antibodies that compete in the binding of 0.5 $\beta$  to ABJ709. Serum samples were obtained from two healthy carriers of HIV ( $\square$ ,  $\square$ ), an ARC ( $\Delta$ ) and two normal donors ( $\bullet$ ,  $\bullet$ ). Data presented as mean value of duplicate determinations.

## DISCUSSION

The HIV producing cells (mainly monocyte/macrophages) have been detected in peripheral blood, lymph node, brain, and lung.<sup>6,12,27</sup> Plata et al.<sup>7</sup> reported that 12–58% of the macrophages in bronchoalveolar lavage fluids were positive for HIV. Using scanning/transmission-immunogold techniques, Herrera et al. have detected a high frequency of HIV antigen-bearing cells in PBM cells from HIV-positive patients.<sup>28</sup> The viremic state of HIV infection was detected and found to be associated with the progression of clinical stages by long-term observation of infected individuals.<sup>29</sup> The continuous production of HIV by viral reservoir cells has been considered to play a central role in the progression of HIV-associated diseases.

Here, we demonstrated that the toxin-conjugated anti-gp120 monoclonal antibody selectively killed HIV-infected cells *in vitro*. The killing effects of the immunotoxins toward gp120-bearing cells in a patient's PBM cells observed *in vitro* may suggest the possible use of the immunotoxins to eliminate selectively HIV-producing cells *in vivo*. High titer anti-HIV sera from healthy seropositives were used as an adoptive immunotherapy to treat AIDS patients and showed some effects.<sup>10</sup> Anti-gp120 immunotoxins may have an advantage over other immunotherapy since they destroy HIV-producing cells without participation of effector cells which may also be susceptible to HIV infection. Anti-gp120 immunotoxin may at least help to reduce viral burden in infected individuals.

TABLE 1. SUMMARY OF CYTOFLUOROGRAPHIC ANALYSIS OF PERIPHERAL BLOOD MONONUCLEAR CELLS (PBM) FROM SEROPOSITIVE INDIVIDUALS

PBM donor	Clinical status	T4/T8 Ratio	% positive cells	
			Region A	Region B
1	ARC	0.7	1.8	18.1
2	AC	1.0	ND	12.8
3	AC	0.76	< 1	2.8
4	AC	1.09	< 1	< 1
5	ARC	0.6	ND	< 1
6	ARC	0.5	< 1	< 1
7	AC	0.7	< 1	< 1
8	AC	ND	< 1	< 1
9	AC	0.6	< 1	< 1
10	AC	ND	< 1	< 1
Normal PBM (n=2)			< 1	< 1
H9/IIIIB			84	
H9			< 1	

\*PBM were separated on Ficoll-Conray density gradients, stained with 0.5 $\beta$ , and analyzed. The percent positive cells was determined by integration of the fluorescence peak after subtraction of nonspecific background staining.

Abbreviations: ND; not done. ARC; AIDS-related complex. AC; asymptomatic carrier.

Several explanations about the higher frequency of HIV antigen-bearing cells in two patients, compared with that previously reported by Harper et al. are possible.<sup>27</sup> The difference in assay procedure may account for some of the discrepancies. First, indirect immunofluorescence assay (IFA) and in situ hybridization (ISH) used in the previous reports may be less sensitive than flow cytometric analysis. Second, in flow cytometric analysis, the percent positive cells were calculated by integration of the fluorescence peak after subtraction of nonspecific background staining. By contrast, percent positivities in IFA or ISH were calculated from distinct positive and negative cell number. Third, in flow cytometric analysis positivities were calculated within the monocyte/macrophage population by gating in the cytogram, while in IFA and ISH, percent positive cells were calculated in PBM cells as a whole.

Recently, toxins conjugated with soluble CD4 molecule were produced and reported by two groups.<sup>31,32</sup> These CD4 toxins also killed HIV-infected cells in vitro and were shown to be effective against variety of divergent strains of HIV. Because the binding activity of 0.5 $\beta$  is type specific, on the other hand, administration of a toxin-conjugated 0.5 $\beta$  alone may select variant viruses to replicate in infected individuals.<sup>33</sup> It is possible to overcome this problem by producing an immunotoxin that is broadly reactive with a number of HIV isolates or by making a set of type-specific immunotoxins that cover many isolates. Polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies to gp120 that may be able to react with multiple HIV isolates were reported.<sup>34,35</sup> It will be important to see if these group-specific antibodies can also be used to produce effective immunotoxins. The strategy of an immunotherapy against HIV-infected cells by anti-envelope immunotoxins may also have an implication in the treatment of other persistent viral infections.

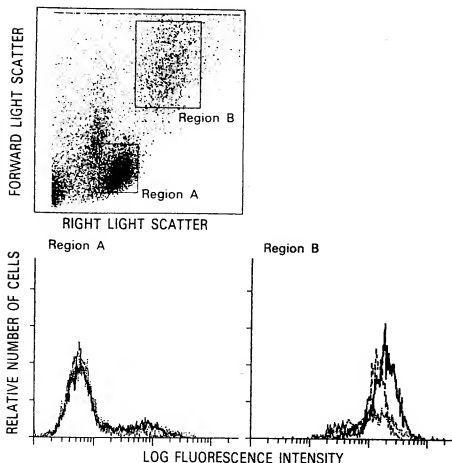


FIG. 5. Elimination of gp120-bearing cells by RAC- $\beta$  in a PBM cells from an ARC patient in vitro. PBM cells ( $10^6$ ) from an ARC patient were resuspended in the complete medium containing human IgG and cultured in the presence of the following reagents: sample 1 and 2, MOPC21 (control IgG1); sample 3, 0.5 $\beta$ ; sample 4, RAC- $\beta$ . After 36 h in culture, cells in each sample were collected and reacted with either MOPC21 (sample 1) or 0.5 $\beta$  (samples 2,3,4). The cells were further stained with FITC-conjugated F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragment of anti-mouse IgG antibody and analyzed by laser flow cytometry. The profile of sample 1, stained with MOPC21, is indicated by a broken line. The profile of sample 2, stained with 0.5 $\beta$ , is shown in a solid line. The profile of sample 3, stained with 0.5 $\beta$ , is identical to that of sample 2 (not shown). The profile of sample 4 is shown by a dotted line. Note that RAC- $\beta$  eliminated the cells in the B region which were positive for 0.5 $\beta$  reactivity. The cytogram (left panel) depicts the population of the cells as mainly consisting of lymphocytes (A region) and monocytes/macrophages (B region).

## REFERENCES

1. Barre-Sinoussi F, Chermann JC, Rey F, Nugeyre MT, Chamaret S, Gruest J, Dauguet C, Axler-Blin C, Vezinet-Brun F, Rouzioux C, Rozenbaum W, and Montagnier L: Isolation of T-lymphotropic retrovirus from a patient at risk for acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). *Science* 1983;220:868-871.
2. Popovic M, Sarngadharan MG, Read E, and Gallo RC: Detection, isolation, and continuous production of cytopathic retroviruses (HTLV-III) from patients with AIDS and pre-AIDS. *Science* 1984;224:497-500.
3. Hoxie JA, Haggarty BS, Rackowski JL, Pillsbury N, and Levy JA: Persistent noncytopathic infection of normal human T-lymphocytes with AIDS-associated retrovirus. *Science* 1985;229:1400-1402.
4. Gartner S, Markovits P, Markovitz DM, Kaplan MH, Gallo RC, and Popovic M: The role of mononuclear phagocytes in HTLV-III/LAV infection. *Science* 1986;233:215-219.

5. Ho DD, Rota TR, and Hirsch MS: Infection of monocyte/macrophages by human T lymphotropic virus type III. *J Clin Invest* 1986;77:1712-1715.
6. Koenig S, Gendelman HE, Orenstein JM, Dal Canto MC, Pezeskhpour GH, Yungbluth M, Janotta F, Aksamit A, Martin MA, and Fauci AS: Detection of AIDS virus in macrophages in brain tissue from AIDS patients with encephalopathy. *Science* 1986;233:1089-1093.
7. Plata F, Autran B, Martins LP, Wain-Hobson S, Raphael M, Mayaud C, Denis M, Guillon JM, and Debre P: AIDS virus-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in lung disorders. *Nature* 1987;328:348-351.
8. Rook AH, Lane HC, Folks T, McCoy S, Alter H, and Fauci AS: Sera from HTLV-III/LAV antibody-positive individuals mediate antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity against HTLV-III/LAV-infected T cells. *J Immunol* 1987;138:1064-1067.
9. Walker BD, Chakrabarti S, Moss B, Paradis TJ, Flynn T, Durno AG, Blumberg RS, Kaplan JC, Hirsh MS, and Schooley RT: HIV specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes in seropositive individuals. *Nature* 1987;328:345-348.
10. Nara PL, Robey WG, Gonda MA, Carter SG, and Fischinger PJ: Absence of cytotoxic antibody to human immunodeficiency virus infected cells in humans and its induction in animals after infection or immunization with purified envelope glycoprotein gp120. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1987;84:3797-3801.
11. Robert-Guroff M, Brown M, and Gallo RC: HTLV-III neutralizing antibodies in patients with AIDS and AIDS-related complex. *Nature* 1985;316:72-74.
12. Weiss RA, Clapham PR, Cheingsong-Popov R, Dalgleish AG, Carne CA, Weller IVD, and Tedder RS: Neutralization of human T-lymphotropic virus type III by sera of AIDS and AIDS-risk patients. *Nature* 1985;316:69-72.
13. Robert-Guroff M, Oleske JM, Connor EM, Epstein LG, Minnefor AB, and Gallo RC: Relationship between HTLV-III neutralizing antibody and clinical status of pediatric acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) and AIDS-related complex cases. *Pediatr Res* 1987;21:547-550.
14. Robert-Guroff M, Giardina PJ, Robey WG, Jennings AM, Naugle CJ, Akbar AN, Grady RW, and Hilgartner MW: HTLV-III neutralizing antibody development in transfusion-dependent seropositive patients with  $\beta$ -thalassemia. *J Immunol* 1987;138:3731-3736.
15. Lasky LA, Groopman JE, Fennie CW, Benz PM, Capon DJ, Dowbenko DJ, Nakamura GR, Nunes WM, Renz ME, and Berman PW: Neutralization of the AIDS retrovirus by antibodies to a recombinant envelope glycoprotein. *Science* 1986;233:209-233.
16. Putney SD, Matthews TJ, Robey WG, Lynn DL, Robert-Guroff M, Mueller WT, Langlois AJ, Ghayeb J, Ghayeb SR, Petteway SR, Weinhold KJ, Fischinger PJ, Wong-Staal F, Gallo RC, and Bolognesi DP: HTLV-III/LAV-neutralizing antibodies to an *E. coli*-produced fragment of the virus envelope. *Science* 1986;234:1392-1395.
17. Robey WG, Arthur LO, Matthews TJ, Langlois AJ, Copeland TD, Lerche NW, Oroszlan S, Bolognesi DP, Gilden RV, and Fischinger PJ: Prospect for prevention of human immunodeficiency virus infection: purified 120-kDa envelope glycoprotein induces neutralizing antibody. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1986;83:7023-7027.
18. Zarling JM, Eichberg JW, Moran PA, McClure J, Sridhar P, and Hu S: Proliferative and cytotoxic T cells to AIDS virus glycoproteins in chimpanzees immunized with a recombinant vaccinia virus expressing AIDS virus envelope glycoproteins. *J Immunol* 1987;139:988-990.
19. Lyerly HK, Matthews TJ, Langlois AJ, Bolognesi DP, and Weinhold KJ: Human T-cell lymphotropic virus IIIB glycoprotein (gp120) bound to CD4 determinants on normal lymphocytes and expressed by infected cells serves as target for immune attack. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1987;84:4601-4605.
20. Salk J: Prospects for the control of AIDS by immunizing seropositive individuals. *Nature* 1987;327:473-476.
21. Pastan I, Willingham MC, and Fitzgerald DJP: Immunotoxins. *Cell* 1986;47:641-648.
22. Matsushita S, Robert-Guroff M, Rusche J, Koito A, Hattori T, Hoshino H, Javaherian K, Takatsuki K, and Putney S: Characterization of a human immunodeficiency virus neutralizing monoclonal antibody and mapping of the neutralizing epitope. *J Virol* 1988;62:2107-2114.



# ANTI-GP120 IMMUNOTOXIN AGAINST HIV-INFECTION

23. Krolick KA, Uhr JW, and Vitetta ES: Preparation and application of antibodies coupled to the A chain of ricin. *Meth Enzymol* 1983;93:333-338.
24. Hattori T, Sagawa K, Matsushita S, Koito A, Suto H, Matsuo M, Yokoyama M, and Takatsuki K: Characterization of three monoclonal antibodies (VAK 3-5) that identify p24, core protein of human immunodeficiency virus and its precursors. *Jpn J Cancer Res (Gann)* 1987;78:235-281.
25. Palker TJ, Clark ME, Langlois AJ, Matthews TJ, Weinhold KJ, Randall RR, Bolognesi DP, and Haynes BF: Type-specific neutralization of the human immunodeficiency virus with antibodies to env-encoded synthetic peptides. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1988;85:1932-1936.
26. Skinner MA, Ting R, Langlois AJ, Weinhold KJ, Lyster HK, Javaheerian K, and Matthews TJ: Characteristics of a neutralizing monoclonal antibody to the HIV envelope glycoprotein. *AIDS Res Human Retrovir* 1988;4:187-197.
27. Harper ME, Marselle LM, Gallo RC, and Wong-Staal F: Detection of lymphocytes expressing human T-lymphotropic virus type III in lymph nodes and peripheral blood from infected individuals by in situ hybridization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1986;83:772-776.
28. Herrera MI, Santa Maria I, de Andrés R, and Najera R: Localization of human immunodeficiency virus antigens in infected cells by scanning/transmission-immunogold techniques. *Ultrastruct Pathol* 1988;12:439-447.
29. Allain JP, Laurian Y, Paul DA, Verroust F, Leuther M, Gazengel C, Senn D, Larrieu MJ, and Bosser C: Long term evaluation of HIV antigen and antibodies to p24 and gp41 in patients with hemophilia. *N Engl J Med* 1987;317:1114-1121.
30. Jackson GG, Perkins JC, Rubenis M, Paul DA, Knigge M, Desportes JC, and Spencer P: Passive immunoneutralisation of human immunodeficiency virus in patients with advanced AIDS. *Lancet* 1988;ii:647-651.
31. Till MA, Ghetie V, Gregory T, Patzer EJ, Parter JP, Uhr JW, Capon DJ, and Vitetta ES: HIV-infected cells are killed by rCD4-ricin A chain. *Science* 1988;242:1166-1168.
32. Chaudhary VK, Mizukami T, Fuerst TR, FitzGerald DJ, Moss B, Pastan I, and Berger EA: Selective killing of HIV-infected cells by recombinant human CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein. *Nature* 1988;335:369-372.
33. Robert-Guroff M, Reitz MS, Robey WG, and Gallo RC: In vitro generation of an HTLV-III variant by neutralizing antibody *J Immunol* 1986;137:3306-3309.
34. Chanh TC, Dreesman GR and Kennedy RC: Monoclonal anti-idiotypic antibody mimics the CD4 receptor and binds human immunodeficiency virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1987;84:3891-3895.
35. Ho DD, Kaplan JC, Rackauskas IE, and Gurney ME: Second conserved domain of gp120 is important for HIV infectivity and antibody neutralization. *Science* 1988;239:1021-1023.

Address reprint requests to:  
 Shuzo Matsushita, M.D.  
 The Second Division of Internal  
 Medicine Kumamoto University  
 Medical School. 1-1-1 Honjo,  
 Kumamoto 860, Japan

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART I**

### **EXHIBIT B**

## *In vitro* evolution of a neutralizing human antibody to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 to enhance affinity and broaden strain cross-reactivity

(passive immunization/viral neutralization/phage display/combinatorial libraries/complementarity-determining regions)

CARLOS F. BARBAS III<sup>†\*</sup>, DANA HU<sup>\*</sup>, NANCY DUNLOP<sup>‡</sup>, LYNETTE SAWYER<sup>§</sup>, DOUG CABABA<sup>\*</sup>,  
R. MICHAEL HENDRY<sup>§</sup>, PETER L. NARA<sup>‡</sup>, AND DENNIS R. BURTON<sup>\*†</sup>

Departments of <sup>\*</sup>Molecular Biology and <sup>†</sup>Immunology, The Scripps Research Institute, 10666 North Torrey Pines Road, La Jolla, CA 92037; <sup>‡</sup>Laboratory of Tumor Cell Biology, Virus Biology Section, National Cancer Institute-Fredrick Cancer Research and Development Center, Frederick, MD 21702; <sup>§</sup>Wiral and Rickettsial Disease Laboratory, California Department of Health Services, 2151 Berkeley Way, Berkeley, CA 94704

Communicated by Robert M. Chanock, January 4, 1994

**ABSTRACT** A method is described that allows for the improvement of antibody affinity. This method, termed complementarity-determining region (CDR) walking, does not require structural information on either antibody or antigen. Complementarity-determining regions are targeted for random mutagenesis followed by selection for fitness, in this case increased binding affinity, by the phage-display approach. The current study targets a human CD4-binding-site anti-gp120 antibody that is potentially and broadly neutralizing. Evolution of affinity of this antibody demonstrates in this case that affinity can be increased while reactivity to variants of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 is broadened. The neutralizing ability of this antibody is improved, as assayed with laboratory and primary clinical isolates of human immunodeficiency virus type 1. The ability to produce human antibodies of exceptional affinity and broad neutralizing ability has implications for the therapeutic and prophylactic application of antibodies for human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection.

The ability to clone human antibodies in large numbers from seropositive individuals (1, 2) or to create them *de novo* by using synthetic approaches (3–5) promises increased application of this class of molecules in the service of human health. There are a number of considerations in choosing an antibody-combining site; these are primarily affinity and specificity. Current molecular methods should allow for experimenter-controlled evolution of binding sites to satisfy demands in both areas. The generation of molecules with exceptional affinities should both increase biological potency and decrease the cost of antibodies as therapeutics.

Currently, there is an increased urgency for the development of molecules for the prophylaxis and therapy of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) infection. Passive immunotherapy has been successfully used against a number of viruses (6) and indeed has been used to protect chimpanzees against HIV-1 infection (7, 8) and to protect cynomolgus monkeys against simian immunodeficiency virus and HIV type 2 infection (9). One of the major problems in using antibodies as anti-HIV-1 reagents is sequence variation in the envelope proteins of the virus. Because the virus requires the binding of the surface glycoprotein gp120 to the CD4 molecule on the target cell for infectivity (10, 11), the CD4-binding site on gp120 has become a popular target for antiviral antibodies (12–16). However, antibodies to this region are not generally particularly potent in terms of virus neutralization. Furthermore, such antibodies tend to be even less potent against primary isolates of virus than the more commonly

used laboratory-adapted strains (17). Using combinatorial libraries, we have isolated human anti-CD4-binding site antibodies with quite exceptional neutralizing ability (18). Nevertheless, we wished to improve the likelihood that these antibodies could succeed in prophylactic and therapeutic application.

In the present report we develop a strategy for evolution of antibody affinity. The method is applied to an HIV-1 neutralizing human antibody directed against the CD4-binding site of gp120. For this antibody, which already shows exceptional neutralizing potency, we show the possibility of increasing affinity, potency, and broadening strain reactivity.

### MATERIALS AND METHODS

**Reagents, Strains, and Vectors.** Oligonucleotides were from Operon Technologies (Alameda, CA). *Escherichia coli*, phage, and the phagemid vector pComb3 are as described (19). The recombinant glycoproteins (rgps) 120 IIIB(LAI) and 120 MN were purchased from American Bio-Technologies (Cambridge, MA) and AgMed (Cambridge, MA), respectively. Reagents for surface plasmon resonance experiments were obtained from Pharmacia.

**Library Construction and Selection.** *Experiment A.* A HindIII restriction site was introduced preceding the heavy-chain complementarity-determining region (CDR) I by standard methods into clone HIV-4 (18) in the pComb3 vector (19). Clone HIV-4 (Fab b4) and HIV-12 (Fab b12) are identical. This Fab was selected by panning against gp120 IIIB(LAI). The GenBank accession no. of HIV-4 sequence is L03147. A CDR1 library was constructed by PCR of the above construct with primers (i) 5'-GAA-GGT-TTC-TTG-TCA-AGC-TTC-TGG-ATA-CAG-ATT-CAG-TNN-SNN-SNN-SNN-SNN-STG-GGT-GCG-CCA-GGC-CCC-C and (ii) primer R3B(20), where N is A, C, G, or T, and S is G or C.

The PCR product was gel-purified, digested with HindIII and Spe I, and gel-purified. The product was ligated with HindIII- and Spe I-digested HIV-4. Subsequent steps were as described (3, 17) to produce phage displaying antibody Fab fragments on their surface. The library,  $2 \times 10^7$  clones, was affinity-selected by four rounds of panning against gp120 IIIB(LAI) immobilized, on Costar 3690 microtiter wells. One well coated with  $1 \mu\text{g}$  of gp120 IIIB was used for each round of selection. After selection, plasmid DNA was prepared, and individual clones were sequenced.

**Abbreviations:** CDR, complementarity-determining region; HCRI1 and HCRI2, heavy chain CDR1 or CDR2, respectively; HIV-1, human immunodeficiency virus type 1; PBMC, peripheral blood mononuclear cell; sCD4, soluble CD4; rgp, recombinant glycoprotein.

<sup>†</sup>To whom reprint requests should be addressed.

The publication costs of this article were defrayed in part by page charge payment. This article must therefore be hereby marked "advertisement" in accordance with 18 U.S.C. §1734 solely to indicate this fact.

**Experiment B.** Plasmid DNA isolated after experiment A was used as a template for PCR with oligonucleotide primers (iii) CCC-TTT-GCC-CCA-GAC-GTC-CAT-ATA-AT-ATT-GTC-CTG-GGG-AGA-ATC-ATC-MNN-MNN-MNN-MNN-CCC-CAC-TCT-CGC-ACA and (iv) FTX-3 (20) to randomize within heavy chain CDR3 (HCDR3) (M = A or C, which gives K = T or G in the complementary strand; NNK doping strategy). The PCR product was gel-purified, digested with *Aat* II and *Xho* I, and gel-purified. This PCR product was ligated with *Aat* II, *Xho* I-digested HIV-4. Subsequent steps were described above to yield a library of  $8 \times 10^6$  clones. The library was affinity-selected by six rounds of panning against gp120 IIIB. After selection, the gIII fragment was removed, and soluble Fab was produced. The complete amino acid sequences of the variable regions of selected antibodies were deduced by dideoxynucleotide chain-termination sequencing. Fab was purified to homogeneity by affinity chromatography, as described (19).

**Surface Plasmon Resonance.** The kinetic constants for the binding of Fab to gp120 IIIB and MN were determined by surface plasmon resonance-based measurements using the BIACore instrument from Pharmacia. The sensor chip was activated for immobilization with *N*-hydroxysuccinimide and *N*-ethyl-*N'*-(3-diethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide. The proteins, gp120 IIIB or MN, were coupled to the surface by injection of 50  $\mu$ l of a 50  $\mu$ g/ml sample. Excess activated esters were quenched with 15  $\mu$ l of ethanolamine (1 M and pH 8.5). Typically 4000 resonance units were immobilized. Binding of Fab fragments to immobilized gp120 was studied by injection of Fab in a range of concentrations (0.5–10  $\mu$ g/ml) at a flow rate of 5  $\mu$ l/min. The association was monitored as the increase in resonance units per unit time. Dissociation measurements were acquired after the end of the association phase but with a flow rate of 50  $\mu$ l/min. The binding surface was regenerated with HCl (1 M NaCl and pH 3) and remained active for 20–40 measurements. The association and dissociation rate constants,  $k_{on}$  and  $k_{off}$ , were determined from a series of measurements as described (20–22). Equilibrium association and dissociation constants were deduced from the rate constants.

**Quantitative Infectivity Assay Based on Syncytium Formation.** Quantitative neutralization assays with the MN and LA1 (IIIB) strains were done as described (23). Monolayers of CEM-SS target cells were cultured with virus in the presence or absence of Fab, and the number of syncytium-forming units of input virus was determined 3–5 days later. Equivalent amounts of virus were used in the assays to allow direct comparison of Fab concentrations tested. Data represent the average of at least two runs. Assays were repeatable over a virus-surviving fraction range of 1–0.001 within a 2- to 4-fold difference in the concentration of antibody ( $P < 0.001$ ).

**Microplaque Neutralization.** The quantitative measurement of the reduction of infectivity of primary clinical isolates of HIV-1 was determined with a microplaque assay, as described (24). MT2 cells were used as indicator cells in this assay. The isolation of HIV-1 from frozen peripheral blood lymphocytes obtained from seropositive donors has been described (25). A number of the primary isolates of HIV-1 used in this study have been described (26); these are VL135, VL434, VL069, VL263, and VL596, previously described as isolates 1, 3, 4, 5, and 7, respectively.

## RESULTS

**CDR Walking.** In experiment A, the entire heavy chain CDR (HCDR1), as defined by Kabat et al. (27), was targeted for mutagenesis using the overlap PCR mutagenesis strategy described (3). NNS- or NNK-type doping strategies were used with no assumptions made as to the most fit residue at each position. After four rounds of selection for binding to

gp120 IIIB, the sequencing of 12 clones indicated a preference for asparagine (N) at position 31, an aromatic residue at position 32, serine (S) or threonine (T) primarily at position 33, branched hydrophobic residues at position 34, and hydrophobic and/or aromatic residues at position 35 (Fig. 1). Experiment B introduced diversity into HCDR3 at positions 96–99 of the clones that survived the four rounds of selection of experiment A. After six rounds of selection for binding to gp120 IIIB, a strong consensus was seen in both mutagenized CDRs (Fig. 1). At the time these selection experiments were done, only gp120 IIIB was commercially available. Only in case 3B8 was the starting HCDR3 nucleotide and amino acid sequence identical to the parent, indicating some contamination in the secondary library. The net results of this two-step sequential CDR walk were minimal changes from the starting clone. The parental residues at positions 31, 32, 34, and 99 were strongly or absolutely maintained. The hydrophobic parental residue Val-33 was predominantly hydrophilic threonine or serine after selection. Position 96 appears flexible to a variety of substitutions as does position 98. Position 97 shows a preference for the increased steric bulk of the Tyr-97  $\rightarrow$  Trp mutation.

**Affinity Measurement.** After selections, four clones were chosen for further study. Clones were chosen that were related to one another by small changes in amino acid sequence and which displayed the most dramatic change in amino acid identity at positions 96 and 98. The kinetics of binding of purified Fab to two types of gp120 from the highly divergent isolates MN and IIIB were chosen (28). Comparison of the protein gp120 MN to gp120 IIIB revealed 88 amino acid changes in the aligned sequences from gp120 IIIB, as well as 11 deletions and 5 insertions of amino acids. Binding kinetics were studied in real time by using surface plasmon resonance. The kinetic and calculated equilibrium constants are tabulated for the binding of Fabs to both gp120s (Table 1). The parental clone HIV-4 binds gp120 IIIB with  $\approx 10$ -fold better affinity than gp120 MN, a trend that is maintained for the evolved clones. The highest-affinity Fab, 3B3, is improved 8-fold in affinity to gp120 IIIB and 6-fold in affinity to gp120 MN. The increases in affinities of the evolved Fabs binding to gp120 IIIB and gp120 MN are well-correlated as shown in Fig. 2. Thus, without selective pressure for binding to gp120 MN, increase in affinity to

Experiment A					Experiment B				
CDR1					CDR1		CDR3		
31	32	33	34	35	31	32	33	34	35
N	F	V	I	H			P	Y	S
R	Y	T	V	F	N	F	T	M	Q
N	W	S	V	M	N	Y	T	I	M
G	Y	T	L	M	N	F	T	V	H
N	F	T	L	L	N	Y	T	L	I
H	Y	S	L	M	N	F	I	M	L
N	W	V	V	H	N	F	S	I	M
N	F	S	I	M	N	Y	T	I	Q
N	F	A	I	H	N	F	T	V	H
N	F	T	M	V			P	W	R
N	F	T	L	Q					
Y	F	T	M	H					
S	Y	P	L	H					

Fig. 1. CDR walking for the selection of improved variants of HIV-1. In experiment A, HCDR1, is randomized over positions 31–35. After selection for binding to gp120 IIIB the sequences listed in experiment A were observed. Experiment B introduces additional diversity into HCDR3 positions 96–99 in clones that were selected in experiment A. After additional selective pressure to bind gp120 IIIB, the sequences listed under experiment B were observed. The sequences of the parental clone HIV-4 are shown for comparison.

Table 1. Binding and neutralization data for evolved Fab reacting with laboratory isolates of HIV-1

Fab	gp120 type	$k_{on}$ , $M^{-1}s^{-1}$	$k_{off}$ , $s^{-1}$	$K_d$ , $M^{-1}$	$K_d$ , M	IC <sub>50</sub>	
						$\mu g/ml$	M
HIV-4	IIIB	$7.6 \times 10^4$	$4.8 \times 10^{-4}$	$1.6 \times 10^8$	$6.3 \times 10^{-9}$	$3.9 \times 10^{-2}$	$7.7 \times 10^{-10}$
HIV-4	MN	$3.4 \times 10^4$	$1.5 \times 10^{-3}$	$2.3 \times 10^7$	$4.4 \times 10^{-8}$	$3.0 \times 10^{-1}$	$5.9 \times 10^{-9}$
3B1	IIIB	$8.5 \times 10^4$	$1.1 \times 10^{-4}$	$7.7 \times 10^8$	$1.3 \times 10^{-9}$	$2.2 \times 10^{-2}$	$4.4 \times 10^{-10}$
3B1	MN	$1.4 \times 10^5$	$1.8 \times 10^{-3}$	$7.8 \times 10^7$	$1.3 \times 10^{-8}$	$9.2 \times 10^{-3}$	$1.9 \times 10^{-10}$
3B3	IIIB	$8.4 \times 10^4$	$6.5 \times 10^{-5}$	$1.3 \times 10^9$	$7.7 \times 10^{-10}$	$4.7 \times 10^{-2}$	$9.4 \times 10^{-10}$
3B3	MN	$1.6 \times 10^5$	$1.2 \times 10^{-3}$	$1.3 \times 10^8$	$7.5 \times 10^{-9}$	$5.5 \times 10^{-3}$	$1.1 \times 10^{-10}$
3B4	IIIB	$7.7 \times 10^4$	$3.6 \times 10^{-4}$	$2.1 \times 10^8$	$4.8 \times 10^{-9}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-2}$	$9.9 \times 10^{-10}$
3B4	MN	$8.6 \times 10^4$	$4.1 \times 10^{-3}$	$2.1 \times 10^7$	$4.8 \times 10^{-8}$	$2.0 \times 10^{-2}$	$3.9 \times 10^{-10}$
3B9	IIIB	$4.5 \times 10^4$	$1.8 \times 10^{-4}$	$2.5 \times 10^8$	$5.0 \times 10^{-9}$	$6.6 \times 10^{-2}$	$1.3 \times 10^{-9}$
3B9	MN	$8.1 \times 10^4$	$1.1 \times 10^{-3}$	$7.4 \times 10^7$	$1.4 \times 10^{-8}$	$7.8 \times 10^{-3}$	$1.6 \times 10^{-10}$

The ability of parental and evolved Fabs to bind gp120 IIIB and MN was determined by surface plasmon resonance (20–22). The equilibrium association and dissociation constants were calculated from the experimentally determined kinetic constants where  $K_d = k_{off}/k_{on}$  and  $K_d = k_{on}/k_{off}$ . The interpolated IC<sub>50</sub> values of Fab-neutralizing MN and IIIB viral stocks, as determined with the quantitative infectivity assay based on syncytium formation (23), are given in  $\mu g/ml$  and in molar units.

gp120 IIIB is accompanied by increased affinity to gp120 MN. Though a series of single-point mutations is not available in the clones examined to assign changes in affinity directly, comparison of Fab 3B3 with Fab 3B9 and Fab 3B1 with Fab 3B4, which each differ at two positions, suggests change of Pro-96 to glutamine or glutamate as the most productive change. Further examination of acidity changes within the evolved Fabs suggests affinity increases are correlated with decreased pI values of Fabs. The antigens gp120 IIIB and MN have basic calculated pI values of 9.5 and 9.3, respectively. pI considerations may also contribute to the anomalous behavior of Fab 3B9, which is the only Fab that is increased in pI, as compared with the parent.

**Neutralization Studies.** Quantitative neutralization assays with the laboratory-adapted strains MN and LAI (IIIB) were done to determine potency of the Fabs (23). As shown in Fig. 3A, the evolved Fabs are clearly improved in their abilities to neutralize infectivity of the MN viral stock. The binding affinity of Fabs to gp120 MN is well-correlated with ability to neutralize the MN stock (Fig. 4). The highest-affinity Fab, 3B3, is improved 54-fold with respect to neutralization of the MN isolate in this assay (Table 1). A different MN viral stock

was used in these studies than had been used in the initial characterization of Fab HIV-4 (18). This result is reflected in a difference in activity, as compared with this previous report. Studies with the LAI (IIIB) viral stock show a clustering of Fabs with similar potencies (Fig. 3B). With this viral stock a range of reactivity of only 3-fold is noted with the most potent Fab, 3B1, showing a modest 2-fold increase in potency. With both viral stocks, Fabs demonstrate exceptional potential potency in the  $10^{-10}$  M range (Table 1). To further

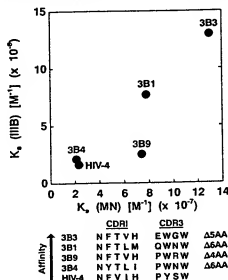


Fig. 2. The affinity increases of evolving Fabs for binding the divergent envelope proteins gp120 IIIB and gp120 MN are well-correlated. Affinities were determined by using the surface plasmon resonance technique (20–22). The sequences of evolved clones are ranked as compared with the parent, and changes in the amino acid (AA) sequence from the parent are shown as ΔAA. See also Table 1.

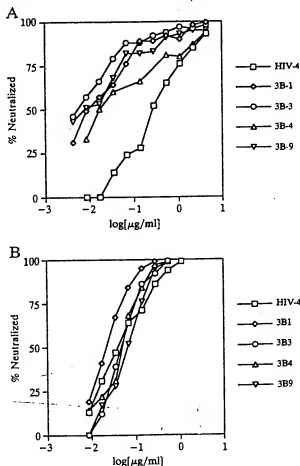


Fig. 3. Evolved Fabs are potent in neutralization assays with laboratory isolates of HIV-1. (A) Parental and improved Fabs are compared in a quantitative infectivity assay based on syncytium formation (23) with MN viral stock. (B) Comparison with LAI (IIIB) viral stock. Results indicate the average of at least two assays.

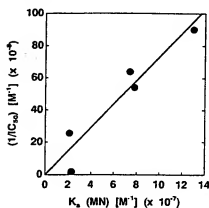


Fig. 4. Affinity increases are well correlated with increased potency in the quantitative infectivity assay with the MN viral stock.  $IC_{50}$  values for the reduction of infectivity were interpolated from Fig. 3A. The equilibrium association constant for binding rgp120 MN was determined as in Table 1.

delineate functional changes that accompany increased affinity, neutralization studies with primary clinical isolates of HIV-1 were done. Primary clinical isolates of HIV-1 were grown in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) (25). As controls in this microplate assay (24), IIB and MN stocks, as well as isolate VL069, were propagated in H9 cells. Additionally, assays with all stocks were done with a pooled plasma from 13 HIV-1-seropositive individuals. In all cases MT2 cells were used as indicator cells. The results are shown in Table 2. In these assays, the highest-affinity Fab, 3B3, is now able to neutralize an additional four isolates, as compared with the parent Fab, HIV-4. Fifty-percent neutralization of isolates VL135 and VL530 by Fab 3B3 at 38.9 and 29.5  $\mu$ g/ml, respectively, is significant because the parent, Fab HIV-4, showed insignificant levels of neutralization,  $\approx 10\%$ , at 50  $\mu$ g/ml. Neutralization of these isolates with pooled positive plasma shows that these isolates are relatively resistant to neutralization, as compared with the laboratory isolates grown in H9 cells. Neutralization of MN and IIB stocks by antibody 3B3 is improved  $\approx 5$ -fold in this assay. A host-cell effect is noted with isolate VL069. Propagation of

this isolate in H9 cells results in a sensitization to neutralization. This effect has been noted previously and is discussed in detail elsewhere (29). In these assays the intrinsic error of the interpolated titers averages  $\pm 30\%$ .

## DISCUSSION

The present study shows the feasibility of improving antibody affinity and function where specific structural information on both antibody and antigen is not available and the antibody already possesses high affinity. The current approach termed "CDR walking" is a variant of our synthetic-antibody approach for the generation of additional specificities *in vitro* (3–5). Practically, there is one important difference. CDR walking involves a limited introduction of diversity into the CDR regions of a defined antibody, as contrasted with the synthetic approach for the generation of new specificities where structural diversity is stressed over library completeness. Diversity in the present case is limited to 6 or fewer amino acid residues with an NNK- or NNS-doping strategy so as to ensure near-complete representation of all possible amino acid combinations. Selection from the library with the phage-display technique then allows for the refinement of the contact between antigen and antibody, which may result from unpredictable sequence changes in the region of interest. Repeated introduction of diversity into CDRs followed by stringent selections should allow for the refinement of human antibodies to levels of affinity far beyond those generated by the immune response. Two strategies are evident for the application of this approach, either sequential or parallel optimization of CDRs. Parallel optimization makes the assumption that the optimized loops will exhibit additivity in free energy changes when the individually optimized loops are combined (30, 31). In many cases, additivity will likely be observed. Sequential optimization takes into account that additivity may not always be observed and that optimal binding may result from the interdependence of loops. Such interdependence could result from coordinated structural changes on binding antigen and is supported by recent evidence that suggests induced-fit mechanisms may best describe antibody-antigen recognition (32, 33). The two-step sequential walk reported here demonstrates the potential of this strategy. Both sequential and parallel approaches are being examined at present. In this initial study HCDRI and HCDRII were chosen for optimization. These CDRs were targeted because rearrangements of these CDRs have been observed on binding of another antibody to antigen (33). Residues 96–99 of HCDRII were targeted because chain-shuffling experiments indicated this region is a hotspot during the natural maturation of this antibody (34). After the randomization and selection protocol that sampled mutations of 9 amino acid positions, higher-affinity Fabs resulted that had mostly modest changes from the parent (Fig. 1). The most radical change involves the Pro-96  $\rightarrow$  Glu mutation found in the highest-affinity clone 3B3, which is 8-fold improved in binding rgp120 IIB. Interestingly, this mutation is also observed in the *in vivo* response, as revealed by chain shuffling. The *in vivo* antibodies that share this mutation are, however, of lower affinity than HIV-4 and have accumulated many additional somatic mutations throughout their sequence (34).

The key issue in producing antibodies to HIV-1 for therapeutic or prophylactic purposes is that they should be highly potent (of high affinity and neutralizing ability) and be cross-reactive with a wide range of isolates. These are usually two opposing characteristics. We have chosen HIV-4, as it recognizes a conformational epitope on gp120 that overlaps the CD4-binding site of gp120 and is broadly and potentially active (19). If HIV-4 is truly recognizing the conserved features (shape) of the CD4-binding region, it should be

Table 2. Neutralization of primary clinical isolates of HIV-1 with natural and evolved Fab

Virus	Host cell	Amount for 50% neutralization, $\mu$ g/ml		Titer + PHP
		HIV-4	3B3	
VL135	PBMC	>50	38.9	1:33
VL263	PBMC	17.0	6.6	<1:10
VL596	PBMC	33.1	17.0	1:10
VL069	PBMC	>50	>50	<1:10
VL434	PBMC	>50	10.5	1:10
VL114	PBMC	>50	5.2	<1:10
VL172	PBMC	>50	>50	1:10
VL530	PBMC	>50	29.5	<1:10
VL750	PBMC	>50	29.5	1:10
IIB	H9	0.36	$\approx 0.068$	1:767
MN	H9	0.18	$\approx 0.044$	1:24,000
VL069	H9	3.6	3.5	1:1,200

The potency of the HIV-4 parental clone and Fab 3B3 to neutralize primary clinical isolates was measured in a microplate assay (24). Virus was either propagated in PBMC or H9 cells. The neutralizing ability of pooled human plasma from 13 HIV-1-seropositive patients (+PHP) is shown for comparison as the titer of the serum dilution. Furthermore, the laboratory-adapted stocks IIB and MN were also tested in this variant assay for comparison. A host-cell effect is shown for isolate VL069 grown in H9 cells (29).

possible to increase its affinity to gp120 for many or all viral strains, as to date all HIV-1 isolates use CD4 as their primary receptor. This phenomenon is, indeed, observed as shown in Fig. 2. Binding has been increased to MN and IIIB, two highly divergent isolates (28). Selective pressure could have been applied to favor cross-reactivity by selecting with a mixture of divergent gp120s; however, this did not prove to be necessary in the present investigation. The present strategy was dictated because only rgp120 IIIB was commercially available when the selection experiments were done. Potency as judged by quantitative neutralization assays with MN and LAI (IIIB) stocks is improved as well (Fig. 3). With the MN isolate affinity is well-correlated with neutralizing ability (Fig. 4). Neutralization of MN and LAI stocks with soluble sCD4 (sCD4) revealed  $IC_{50}$  values of 0.6 nM and 0.8 nM, respectively (35). As shown in Table 1, the parental clone and Fab 3B1 have  $IC_{50}$  values of 0.8 nM and 0.4 nM, respectively, for the LAI stock. For MN, the parental clone and Fab 3B3 have  $IC_{50}$  values of 6 nM and 0.1 nM, respectively. The ability of these evolved monovalent Fabs to neutralize with potencies equivalent to sCD4 is distinctive. The lack of correlation of rgp120 IIIB affinity with neutralizing ability may reflect the sensitivity of the assay conditions in this range. In a recent multicenter study of human and mouse anti-HIV-1 antibodies, no bivalent antibody has demonstrated such potency (36).

Can a single CD4-site antibody fulfill the promises once made by sCD4 as a therapeutic agent? Primary clinical isolates often require 1000-fold more sCD4 for neutralization than laboratory isolates (37–39). This fact may be the primary contributor to the failure of sCD4. As shown in Table 2, the highest-affinity Fab also demonstrates improved ability to neutralize primary clinical isolates. Four isolates not neutralized by the parent are now neutralized by Fab 3B3. For isolated VL114 a titration with bivalent CD4 IgG, predicted to have high activity, yielded an  $IC_{50}$  of  $10 \mu\text{g/ml}$ , as compared with  $5.2 \mu\text{g/ml}$  for Fab 3B3. As most of the CDR residues have yet to be optimized, it should be possible to further evolve this Fab to affinities 100 or 1000 times those reported here. These preliminary results suggest that broadly reactive antibodies of exceptional affinity can be prepared. Such antibodies will likely be of use at least to prevent vertical transmission of virus and in cases of accidental exposure. Ideally a mixture of such antibodies directed against several epitopes would be used. It remains to be demonstrated whether antibodies alone can be effective in cases where lymph nodes and thymus are seeded with the virus; however, they will likely be valuable components in combination therapies (40) and perhaps as key targeting agents in future therapies.

We thank Richard A. Lerner for support and encouragement of this project; Terri Jones and Kim Green for protein purification; and Pamela Morden, Mary Kate Morris, and Leo Odequert for technical support in primary isolate neutralization assays. C.F.B. is a Scholar of the American Foundation for AIDS Research and the recipient of a Scholar award from the Cancer Research Institute. Support for this work was provided by National Institutes of Health Grant AI33292 and Johnson & Johnson.

- Williamson, R. A., Burioni, R., Sanna, P.-P., Partridge, L. J., Barbas, C. F., III, & Burton, D. R. (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90, 4141–4145.
- Burton, D. R. & Barbas, C. F., III (1993) in *Protein Engineering of Antibody Molecules for Prophylactic and Therapeutic Applications in Man*, ed. Clark, M. (Academic Press, London), pp. 65–82.
- Barbas, C. F., III, Bain, J. D., Hoekstra, D. M., & Lerner, R. A. (1992) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89, 4457–4461.

- Lerner, R. A., Kang, A. S., Bain, J. D., Burton, D. R., & Barbas, C. F., III (1992) *Science* 258, 1313–1314.
- Barbas, C. F., III, Langmuir, L. R., & Smith, J. W. (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90, 10003–10007.
- Chanock, R. M., & Lerner, R. A. (Cold Spring Harbor Lab. Press, Plainville, NY), pp. 1–5.
- Emmi, E. A., Schief, W. A., Nunberg, J. H., Conley, A. J., Ede, Y., Tokoyoshi, S., Putney, S. D., Matsushita, S., Cobb, R. E., Jett, C. W., Eichberg, J. W., & Murphy, K. K. (1992) *Nature (London)* 355, 728–730.
- Vardi, R. H., Cagion, D. J., Jeff, C. M., Murphy, K. K., Mordenti, J., Lucas, C., Frie, S. W., Prince, A. M., Green, J. D., & Eichberg, J. W. (1991) *Nature (London)* 352, 434–436.
- Putkonen, P., Thorsen, R., Ghavami, A., Albert, J., Hild, K., Biberfeld, G., & Norby, E. (1991) *Nature (London)* 352, 436–438.
- Deligdisch, A. G., Beverley, P. C. L., Clapham, P. R., Crawford, D. H., Graves, M. F., & Weiss, R. A. (1984) *Nature (London)* 312, 763–767.
- Klatzmann, D., Champagne, E., Chantaret, S., Gruet, J., Guetard, D., Herrendt, T., Gluckman, J. C., & Montagnier, L. (1984) *Nature (London)* 312, 767–768.
- Sun, N.-C., Ho, D. D., Sun, C. R., Y., Liou, R.-S., Gordon, W., Fung, M. S., Li, X.-L., Ting, R. C., Lee, T.-H., Chang, N. T., & Chang, T. W. (1989) *J. Virol.* 63, 3579–3585.
- Thali, M., Olshevsky, U., Furman, C., Gabuzda, D., Posner, M., & Salski, J. (1991) *J. Virol.* 65, 6188–6193.
- Tilley, A., Honnor, W. J., Racho, M. E., Hilgartner, M., & Pinter, A. (1991) *Res. Virol.* 142, 247–259.
- Karwowski, S., Gorny, M. K., Buchbinder, V., Giamklos, C., Williams, T. F., & Zolla-Pazner, S. (1992) *AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses* 8, 1099–1106.
- Moore, J. P., & Ho, D. D. (1993) *J. Virol.* 67, 863–875.
- Moore, J. P., & Sweet, R. W. (1993) *Perspectives in Drug Discovery and Design* 1, 235–250.
- Barbas, C. F., III, Bjorling, E., Chiodi, F., Dunlop, N., Cababa, D., Jones, T. M., Zebrowski, S. L., Persson, M. A., Nara, P. L., Norby, E., & Burton, D. R. (1992) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89, 9339–9343.
- Barbas, C. F., III, Kang, A. S., Lerner, R. A., & Benkovic, S. J. (1991) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88, 7978–7982.
- Barbas, C. F., III, Amberg, W., Simoncini, A., Jones, T. M., & Lerner, R. A. (1993) *Gene* 137, 57–62.
- Altschuld, D., Debs, M.-C., Weiss, E., Zeder-Lutz, G., & Van Regenmortel, M. H. V. (1992) *Biochemistry* 31, 6298–6304.
- Karlsson, R., Michaelsson, A., & Mattsson, L. (1991) *J. Immunol. Methods* 145, 229–240.
- Nara, P. L., Hatch, W. C., Dunlop, N. M., Robey, W. G., Arthur, L. A., Goud, M., & Fischinger, P. J. (1987) *AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses* 3, 283–302.
- Hanson, C. V., Crawford-Mikszta, L., & Sheppard, H. W. (1990) *J. Clin. Microbiol.* 28, 2030–2034.
- Gallo, D., Kimpton, J. S., & Dailey, P. J. (1987) *J. Clin. Microbiol.* 25, 1281–1284.
- Wrin, T., Crawford, L., Sawyer, L., Weber, P., Sheppard, H. W., & Hanson, C. V. (1994) *J. Acquired Immune Defic. Syndr.* 7, 211–219.
- Kabat, E. A., Wu, T. T., Perry, H., & Gottesman, K. (1991) *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest* (U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, Washington, DC), 5th Ed.
- Myers, G., Korber, B., Berzofsky, J. A., Smith, R. F., & Pavlakis, G. N. (1992) *Human Retroviruses and AIDS 1992* (Theoretical Biology and Biophysics, Los Alamos, NM).
- Sawyer, L. S. W., Wrin, T., Crawford-Mikszta, L., Potts, B., Wu, Y., Weber, P. A., Alfonso, R. D., & Hanson, C. V. (1994) *J. Virol.* 68, 1342–1349.
- Wells, J. A. (1990) *Biochemistry* 29, 8509–8517.
- Lowman, H. B., Bass, S. H., Simpson, N., & Wells, J. A. (1991) *Biochemistry* 30, 10832–10838.
- Wilson, I. A., & Stanfield, R. L. (1993) *Curr. Opin. Struct. Biol.* 3, 113–118.
- Stanfield, R. L., Takimoto-Kamimura, M., Rini, J. M., Profy, A. T., & Wilson, I. A. (1993) *Structure* 1, 83–93.
- Barbas, C. F., III, Collet, T. A., Amberg, W., Roben, P., Binley, J. A., Hoekstra, D. C., Cababa, D., Jones, T. M., Williamson, R. A., Pilkington, G. R., Hagwood, N. L., Cababa, E., Satterthwait, A. C., Sanz, I., & Burton, D. R. (1993) *J. Mol. Biol.* 230, 812–823.
- Layne, S. P., Merges, M. J., Dembo, M., Spouge, J. L., & Nara, P. L. (1990) *Nature (London)* 346, 277–279.
- D'Souza, M. P., Geyer, S. J., Hanson, C. V., Hendry, M., Milman, G., & Collaborating Investigators. (1994) *AIDS* 8, 169–181.
- Dae, E. S., Li, X.-L., Moodgil, T., & Ho, D. D. (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87, 6574–6578.
- Moore, J. P., McKenney, J. A., Huang, Y., Ashkenazi, A., & Ho, D. (1992) *J. Virol.* 66, 235–243.
- Orloff, S. L., Kennedy, M. S., Belpert, A. A., Madon, P. G., & McDougall, J. S. (1993) *J. Virol.* 67, 1461–1471.
- Fauci, A. (1993) *Science* 262, 1011–1018.

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART I**

### **EXHIBIT C**





US00:458878A

**United States Patent** [19]**Pastan et al.**[11] **Patent Number:** **5,458,878**[45] **Date of Patent:** **Oct. 17, 1995**[54] **P. EXOTOXIN FUSIO PROTEINS HAVE COOHG22010IAL ALTERATIONS WHICH INCREASE CYTOTOXICITY**[75] **Inventors:** **Ira Pastan, Potomac; Vijay K. Chaudhary, Rockville; David Fitzgerald, Silver Spring, all of Md.**[73] **Assignee:** **The Government of the United States of America as represented by the Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services, Rockville, Md.**[21] **Appl. No.:** **522,563**[22] **Filed:** **May 14, 1990****Related U.S. Application Data**[63] **Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 459,635, Jan. 2, 1990, abandoned.**[51] **Int. Cl.<sup>o</sup>** ..... **A61K 39/104; C07K 3/00; C07K 15/28; C12P 21/08**[52] **U.S. Cl.** ..... **424/260.1; 424/279.1; 435/69.7; 530/387.3; 530/391.7**[58] **Field of Search** ..... **424/85.91, 260.1, 424/279.1; 435/69.7; 530/387.3, 391.7**[56] **References Cited****U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**✓ 4,545,985 10/1985 Pastan et al. .... 424/260.1  
✓ 4,892,827 1/1990 Pastan et al. .... 435/193**OTHER PUBLICATIONS**Siegall et al., *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 85, Dec. 1988, pp. 9738-9742.Chaudhary et al., *Nature*, 1988.Hwang et al., *Cell*, Jan., 1987.✓ Chaudhary et al., *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA Genetics*, vol. 84, Jul. 1987 pp. 4538-4542.Siegall et al.; *J. of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 264, No. 24, Aug., 1989, pp. 14256-14261.Chaudhary et al., *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 84, Jan. 1990, pp. 308-312.Munro et al., *Cell*, vol. 48, Mar., 1987, pp. 899-907.Chow et al.; *J. of Biol. Chem.*, vol. 264, No. 31, Nov., 1989, pp. 18818-18823.Waldmann, *J. of Nat'l. Cancer Inst.*, vol. 81, No. 12, Jun., 1989, pp. 914-923.Lorberbom-Galski, *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 86, Feb., 1989, pp. 1008-1012.Lorberbom-Galski, *J. of Biol. Chem.*, vol. 263, No. 35, Dec., 1988, pp. 18650-18656.Lorberbom-Galski, *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 85, Mar., 1988, pp. 1922-1926.Bailon et al., *Biotechnology*, Nov., 1988, pp. 1326-1329.Ogata et al., *J. of Immunology*, vol. 141, No. 12, Dec., 1988, 4224-4228.Case et al., *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 86, Jan., 1989, pp. 287-291.**Primary Examiner**—David L. Lacey**Assistant Examiner**—T. Michael Nisbet**Attorney, Agent, or Firm**—Townsend and Townsend and Crew

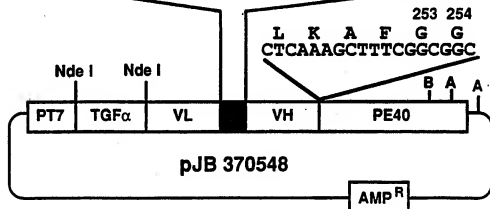
[57]

**ABSTRACT**

A target-specific, cytotoxic, recombinant *Pseudomonas* exotoxin is described. Such toxins are made by inserting specific recognition molecules at specific cloning sites in at least domain III near the carboxyl terminus of the PE molecule. Various modifications of the carboxyl terminus of the PE molecule to increase cytotoxicity are set forth. Multifunctional, recombinant, cytotoxic fusion proteins containing at least two different recognition molecules are provided for killing cells expressing receptors to which the recognition molecules bind with specificity. Methods for producing novel recombinant PE molecules with specific properties are described.

29 Claims, 4 Drawing Sheets

**E G K S S G S G S E S K S T**  
**GAGGGCAAATCTTCGGGCTCTGGCTCTGAGTCTAAATCTACC**



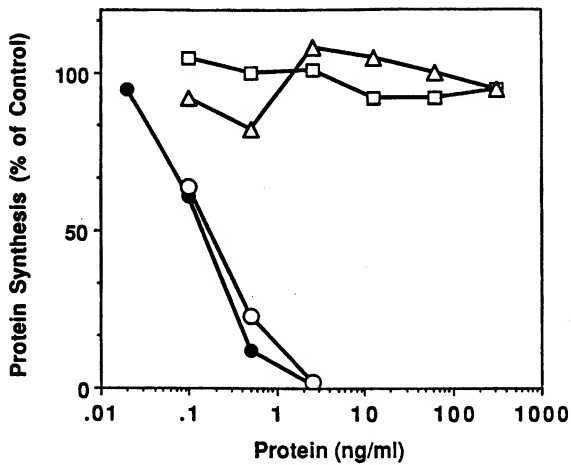


FIG. 1

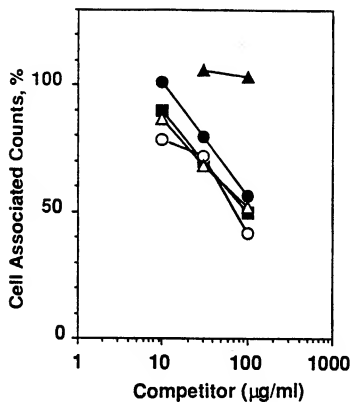


FIG. 2A

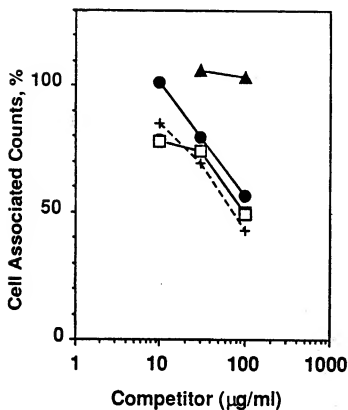


FIG. 2B

3/4

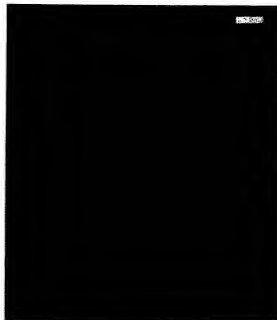


FIG. 3A



FIG. 3B



FIG. 3C

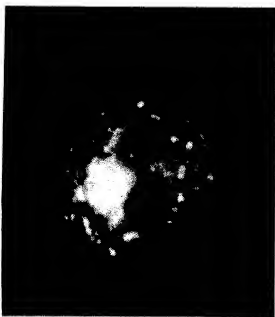


FIG. 3D

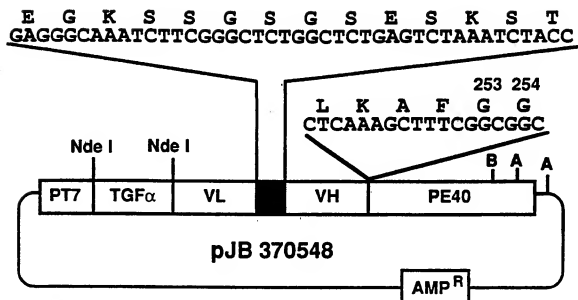


FIG. 4

# P. EXOTOXIN FUSIO PROTEINS HAVE COOHG22010IAL ALTERATIONS WHICH INCREASE CYTOTOXICITY

This is a continuation in part of the application Ser. No. 07/459,635, filed Jan. 2, 1990, now abandoned.

The present invention is related generally to the making of improved recombinant immunotoxins. More particularly, the present invention is related to the construction of a recombinant *Pseudomonas* exotoxin (rPE) with specific cloning sites for the insertion of recognition molecules at least at the carboxyl end of the PE to achieve target-directed cytotoxicity and for the construction of recombinant multifunctional chimeric cytotoxic proteins.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The mechanism by which protein toxins kill cells is quite complex. Many toxins bind to receptors on the surface of mammalian cells, are internalized by endocytosis, translocate to the cytosol and there exert an enzymatic activity that kills the target cell. Accordingly, these toxins have separate domains for cell binding, translocation and an enzymatic activity that inactivates an essential cellular function. *Pseudomonas* exotoxin-A (PE) is a single polypeptide chain of 613 amino acids. X-ray crystallographic studies and mutational analysis of the PE molecule have shown that PE consists of three domains: an amino terminal cell receptor binding domain (Domain I); a middle translocation domain (Domain II); and a carboxyl terminal activity domain (Domain III). Domain III catalyzes the ADP-ribosylation and inactivation of elongation Factor 2 (EF-2) which inhibits protein synthesis and leads to cell death. Mutational analysis of Domain I has revealed that lysine<sup>27</sup> plays a major role in receptor binding. Similarly glutamic acid<sup>553</sup>, Tyrosine<sup>481</sup> and histidine<sup>426</sup> have been shown to be important for ADP-ribosylation activity. Recently mutational analysis of domain II has shown that certain portions of this domain are absolutely required for the cytotoxicity of PE.

While constructing various chimeric toxins in which growth factors were fused to a form of PE (PE40) which was devoid of domain I, it was observed that the recombinant fusion proteins, made by attaching TGF $\alpha$ , interleukin-2 or interleukin-4 at the carboxyl end of PE40 had poor cytotoxic activity. Hence, an examination of the role of the carboxyl terminus of the PE molecule (domain III) was undertaken.

## SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is, therefore, an object of the present invention to determine the role of the carboxyl terminus of the PE molecule in its cytotoxic action.

It is another object of the present invention to identify specific regions at the carboxyl terminus of the PE molecule for the insertion of recognition molecules for selective killing of target cells.

It is a further object of the present invention to provide an improved, target-specific, cytotoxic recombinant PE molecule, wherein the improvement comprises the insertion of target-specific recognition molecule at least in domain III at the carboxyl terminus of the PE molecule.

A still further object of the present invention is to modify the carboxyl end of the PE to increase the potency of the chimeric toxin.

It is yet another object of the present invention to make cytotoxic PE with two recognition molecules (target ligands)

wherein either the same recognition molecule is placed at two different termini, such as the amino terminus and near the carboxy terminus, for enhanced cellular binding, or two different recognition elements are inserted, one each at two different regions of the PE molecule, to enable more effective binding of the resulting PE molecule to the cell surface having two or more different entities, such as antigens, receptors and the like to which said recognition elements could bind.

It is an additional object of the present invention to provide a recombinant PE having repeat carboxyl end sequences for enhanced cytotoxic activity.

An additional object of the present invention is to provide a multifunctional, recombinant cytotoxic chimeric protein for simultaneously killing cells expressing different types of receptors.

Various other objects and advantages will become evident from the following detailed description of the invention.

## ABBREVIATIONS

Various abbreviations, symbols, terminologies and the like used herein are now set forth.

PE-40 means a PE molecule of about 40,000 Mr. (Hwang et al, 1987, Cell 48:129-136) having a deletion of domain I.

TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 means a chimeric protein wherein TGF $\alpha$  is the targeting or recognition molecule linked to PE-40. When the targeting agent is a different entity such as CD4 and the like, the chimeric protein is accordingly designated CD4-PE40 and the like.

When a numbering system is used, such as PE-Gly609, it means that the amino acid at position 609 in the sequence of the native PE has been replaced by glycine. The same convention is used throughout the specification. The symbol means the deletion of amino acids following the symbol.

## BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other objects, features and many of the attendant advantages of the invention will be better understood upon a reading of the following detailed description when considered in connection with the accompanying drawings wherein:

FIG. 1 demonstrates cytotoxicity of PE and PE mutants on Swiss cells. Various dilutions of PE proteins were made in PBS containing 0.2% human serum albumin and added to  $1 \times 10^5$  Swiss 3T3 cells in 24-well plates. Sixteen hours later the cells were pulse labeled with  $^3\text{H}$ -leucine and TCA precipitable cell associated radioactivity was determined as a measure of protein synthesis. The results are expressed as percent of control where no toxin was added.  $\bullet$ — $\bullet$  PE;  $\circ$ — $\circ$  PE $\Delta$ 613;  $\square$ — $\square$  PE $\Delta$ 612,613; and  $\Delta$ — $\Delta$  PE $\Delta$ 611-613. All the assays were done in duplicate and repeated twice.

FIGS. 2A-2B show the results of competition for the cellular uptake of recombinant PE. Swiss 3T3 mouse cells were incubated with 400 ng  $^3\text{H}$ -PE (specific activity  $3.5 \times 10^5$  DPM/ $\mu\text{g}$ ) and increasing concentrations of purified mutant proteins for one hour at 37°C. Cell monolayers were washed and cell-associated radioactivity was determined.  $\bullet$ — $\bullet$  PE;  $\Delta$ — $\Delta$  PEglu57;  $\Delta$ — $\Delta$  PE $\Delta$ 612,613;  $\circ$ — $\circ$  PE $\Delta$ 613;  $\blacksquare$ — $\blacksquare$  PEglu<sup>276</sup>;  $\square$ — $\square$  PE $\Delta$ 609-613;  $\bullet$ — $\bullet$  PE $\Delta$ 609-613 $\bullet$ 598-613.

FIGS. 3A-3A show immunofluorescence detection of binding and internalization of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and its recombinant variants in Swiss 3T3 cells.

were incubated at 37° C. for 30 minutes in the absence of toxin FIG. 3(A) or in the presence of 10 µg/ml of native Pseudomonas exotoxin (PE) FIG. 3(B), recombinant PE gly<sup>57</sup> FIG. 3(C) or recombinant PEΔ612,613 FIG. 3(D). Following this incubation, the cells were fixed in formaldehyde and further incubated in the continuous presence of saponin. The cells were incubated with mouse monoclonal anti PE (M40-1) (10 µg/ml), followed by affinity-purified rhodamine-labeled goat anti-mouse IgG (25 µg/ml). (Mags-  
x400; bar=10 µm).

FIG. 4 schematically shows the construction of a multivalent recombinant cytotoxic fusion protein using for illustration herein TGRα and anti-Tat genes. The expression plasmid pJB370548 contains a fusion gene encoding the first 50 amino acid of TGFα, the variable domain of anti-Tac light chain (VL, first 106 amino acids of anti-Tac light chain), a 14 amino acid linker, the variable anti-Tac heavy chain (VH, first 116 amino acids of heavy chain), and amino acids 253-613 of PE. Amp<sup>r</sup>, β-lactamase gene: B, BamHI; A, Aval. Amino acids are shown as single letter codes. The gene is under the control of the bacteriophage T7 promoter linked to a Shine-Dalgarno sequence and an initiation codon.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The above and various other objects and advantages of the present invention are achieved by a cytotoxic recombinant Pseudomonas exotoxin (rPE) having a recognition molecule inserted at least in domain III at the carboxyl terminus of the PE for selective killing of target cells recognized by said recognition molecule without substantial cytotoxicity to other cells not recognized by said recognition molecule, and by a rPE with modified "cytotoxic sequence" with increased cell killing activity. A multifunctional fusion protein having versatility, flexibility and efficacy for killing cell is expressing different types of receptors is provided.

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. Although any methods and materials similar or equivalent to those described herein can be used in the practice or testing of the present invention, the preferred methods and materials are now described. All publications mentioned hereunder are incorporated herein by reference. Unless mentioned otherwise, the techniques employed or contemplated herein are standard methodologies well known to one of ordinary skill in the art. The materials, methods and examples are illustrative only and not limiting.

The term "recognition molecule" as defined herein means those molecules or ligands which recognize only target cells desired to be killed. Examples of such recognition molecules are antibodies or portions thereof that can recognize the target cells, growth factors, lymphokines, cytokines, antigens, hormones and the like or combination thereof, which specifically bind to molecules on the surface of the target cells.

The term "cytotoxic sequence" as used herein means those variety of amino acid sequences at or near the carboxyl end of the PE, the presence of which is a prerequisite for the cytotoxic activity of the toxin and the repeat sequences of which may determine the level of cytotoxicity. The examples of such sequences are KDEEL, REDLK and the like as will become apparent from the various embodiments of

the sequences discussed herein below.

The term "multivalent" cytotoxic recombinant fusion protein has at least two similar or different recognition molecules for receptors expressed on the target cells, to which either the first, the second or both recognition molecules bind with particular specificity. Of course, the multivalent fusion protein may be made with any of a variety of cytotoxic sequences described herein.

#### MATERIALS AND METHODS

##### Materials

Unless mentioned otherwise, the materials and reagents used herein were obtained from commercial sources. Polymerization Chain Reaction (PCR) kit, Gene Amp Kit, was obtained from Perkin Elmer-Cetus, Norwalk, Conn.

##### Mutants and Plasmid Constructions

Mutants were created by oligonucleotide directed mutagenesis using plasmid pVC45f+T as described by Jinno et al. 1988, *J. Biol. Chem.* 263, 13203-13207 and Jinno et al. 1989, *J. Biol. Chem.* 264, 15953-15959 or using polymerase chain reaction (PCR) as described below. pVC45f+T carries a PE gene under a T7 promoter and also contains a T7 transcriptional terminator and a fl phage origin. The PE gene also contains an OmpA signal sequence which is cleaved upon secretion of PE into the periplasm leaving a 3 amino acid (ala asn leu) extension at the amino terminus (Chaudhary et al. 1988, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85, 2989-2994). For PCR mutagenesis, two oligonucleotides and a 1.0 Kb SalI-EcoRI fragment of pVC45f+T were employed. One oligonucleotide was the same as nucleotides 2216-2236 of the PE gene (Gray et al. 1984, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81, 2645-2649). Other oligonucleotides were complementary to the 3' end of the coding sequence PE gene, contained desired mutations and created an EcoRI site after the stop codon. Other unique restriction sites were also created without changing amino acids to identify the mutants. A 30 cycle PCR was performed with denaturation at 94° C. for 2 minutes, annealing at 55 C. for 1 min and polymerization at 72 C. for 3 min with 10 seconds extension per cycle using a gene amplification thermal cycler (Perkin Elmer Cetus). After the PCR, amplified fragment was cut with EcoRI and BamHI. It was purified using low melting point agarose. PCR fragments were ligated with a 4.5 Kb dephosphorylated EcoRI-BamHI fragment of pVC45f+T. Mutants were identified by unique restriction sites which were created during mutagenesis and finally confirmed by sequencing by Sanger's dideoxy-chain termination procedure using Sequenase (US Biochemical Corp.).

pVC4915f+T  
This plasmid contains two mutations: Codon 608, CCG and 609, CGC were changed to CCC and GGG, respectively. This mutation results in glycine at 609 in place of arginine and creates a SmaI site between codons 608 and 609. This plasmid was used to clone various carboxyl terminal fragments of PE. pVC4975f+T: A 1 Kb BamHI-PstI fragment of pVC8 (Wozniak et al. 1988, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sol. USA* 85, 8880-8884) was restricted with NsiI, treated with T4 DNA polymerase to make blunt ends followed by EcoRI, and a 286 bp fragment was ligated to a 4.9 Kb dephosphorylated SmaI-EcoRI fragment of pVC4915f+T. pVC4985f+T: A 1 Kb BamHI-PstI fragment of pVC8 was restricted with HinfI, treated with T4 DNA polymerase followed by EcoRI and a 237 bp fragment was ligated to the 4.9 Kb SmaI-EcoRI fragment of pVC45f+T. pVC4995f+T: A synthetic oligonucleotide duplex VK192/193 (not shown), containing

codons 598-613 of PE with a stop codon and an EcoRI compatible 3' end, was ligated to the 4.9 Kb SmaI-EcoRI fragment of pVC4915f+T. pVC4715f+T. This plasmid was created by PCR mutagenesis and contains restriction sites StuI, NdeI, SmaI, EcoRV and EcoRI within the 3' end of the PE gene and encodes amino acids RPHMPGDILK in place of PREDLK at 608 to 613. These unique sites were later used to make

DNA segments encoding insertions and to attach various carboxyl terminal portions of PE.  
pVC47195f+T

This was created by ligating oligonucleotide duplex VK191/192 to a 4.9 Kb EcoRV-EcoRI fragment of pVC4715f+T. The carboxyl terminus of this PE mutant contains amino acids RPHMPGDIPDYASQPKPPREDLK in place of amino acids 608-613 (PREDLK) of PE. Plasmids for the insertion of receptor binding domains in the carboxyl end of PE

Plasmid pVC4715f+T consists of DNA sequences encoding PE from amino acids 1 to 607 followed by a polylinker that contains StuI, NdeI, SmaI, EcoRV and AflII sites as well as encodes amino acids RPHMPGDILK. These sequence are under T7 promoter control and also contain Shine-Dalgarno region and signal sequence from OmpA of *E. coli*. Plasmid pVC4715f+T is similar to pVC 4715 f+T, but also contains mutations in the receptor binding domain of PE (Domain I). These mutations are Lys<sup>57</sup>→Glu, His<sup>246</sup>, 249→Glu and Arg<sup>247</sup>→Glu.

Plasmid pVC 47195f+T is similar to pVC4715 f+T but contains a polylinker with StuI, NdeI, SmaI sites encoding amino acids RPHMPGI followed by the last 16 codons of PE that encode PDYASQPKPPREDLK. Plasmid pVC47195f+T contains insertions of a cDNA encoding transforming growth factor  $\alpha$  in the NdeI site of plasmids pVC 4715f+T and 4715/4Ef+T respectively. Plasmids pVC 47395f+T and pVC 47195/4Ef+T are derived from 47195f+T and pVC 47195/4Ef+T by inserting TGF $\alpha$  sequences into the NdeI site. Plasmid pVC 47355/4Ef+T was derived from pVC47395/4Ef+T by deleting 6 amino acids, inserting TGF $\alpha$  and following it with 10 amino acids of the PE carboxyl end.

A deposit of pVC49415f+T and pVC47355/4Ef+T has been made at the ATCC, Rockville, Md., on Dec. 28, 1989 under accession numbers 68198 and 68199, respectively. The deposit shall be viably maintained, replacing it if becomes non-viable during the life of the patent, for a period of 30 years from the date of the deposit, for 5 years from the last date of request for a sample of the deposit, whichever is longer, and upon issuance of the patent made available to the public without restriction in accordance with the provisions of the law. The Commissioner of the Patents and Trademarks, upon request, shall have access to the deposit.  
Protein Expression and Purification

Cultures of *E. coli* strain BL21 (ADE3) containing various plasmids were grown to OD<sub>650</sub> of 0.6-0.8 and induced with 1 mM isopropyl-thiogalactoside for 90 minutes at 37°C. Periplasmic fractions were prepared as described by Chaudhary et al. supra. By virtue of having an OmpA signal sequence, more than 90% of each of the expressed toxin proteins were secreted into the periplasm. These proteins have a residual ala aeu sequence at the amino end left behind after the processing of the OmpA signal sequence. Periplasmic fractions were assayed for ADP ribosylation activity and cytotoxicity. Later PE mutants were purified using a MonoQ anion exchange column (HR5/5) attached to a Pharmacia FPLC system. PE and mutant proteins eluted at NaCl concentrations of 0.22-0.26M. Upon SDS-PAGE the

toxins were more than 90% pure. Protein concentration was measured by the Bradford assay Reagent (BioRad, Richmond, Calif.) using bovine serum albumin as a standard.

#### ADP Ribosylation and Cytotoxicity Assays

ADP ribosylation activity was assayed after the activation of PE and mutant proteins with 4M urea and 50 mM DTT unless otherwise stated (Collier et al, 1971, *J. Biol. Chem.* 246, 1496-1503). Cytotoxicity of PE mutants was determined by adding various dilutions of periplasmic proteins or purified proteins to  $1 \times 10^5$  Swiss 3T3 cells in 24-well plates as described by Jinno et al, (1988) supra, and Jinno et al, (1989) supra. ADP-ribosylation and cytotoxic activities of recombinant PE and native PE (from Swiss Serum and Vaccine Institute, Berne, Switzerland) were indistinguishable.

#### Toxin Binding and Internalization

The ability of various mutant PE proteins to compete the binding of <sup>3</sup>H-labelled PE on Swiss cells as well as internalization of various mutant PE derivatives as studied by immunofluorescence has been described by Jinno et al, (1989) supra.

#### Preparation of Target-Specific Immunotoxins

PE expression vectors with the cloning sites in the carboxyl end of PE to produce selective cytotoxic molecules are illustrated here with TGF $\alpha$ , a recognition molecule which recognizes only EGF receptor bearing cells. These cloning sites were used to insert TGF $\alpha$  near the carboxyl end of PE which produced a very active molecule that killed EGF receptor bearing cells when the insertion was followed by the last 10 amino acids of PE (Table A). The details of the procedure are now described.

#### RESULTS

The role of sequences at the carboxyl end of PE was determined by making a series of carboxyl terminal deletion mutants that removed 1,2,3,7,8,11,14 and 24 amino acids. Removal of two or more amino acids eliminated cytotoxicity without affecting ADP ribosylation activity (Table 1, FIG. 1). In fact, even eleven amino acids (603-613) could be removed without any loss of ADP ribosylation activity. However, removal of 14 amino acids resulted in a protein with low, but measurable, ADP ribosylation activity (600-613) and removal of 24 amino acids (590-613) produced an enzymatically inactive protein. These results indicate that particular sequences at the carboxyl end of PE have a role in toxin action that are not required for ADP ribosylation activity.

The role of the carboxyl terminal sequences in toxin action was defined by creating a series of internal deletions and substitutions (Table 2). These mutations began at amino acid 602 so that ADP ribosylating activity would not be affected and extended to position 611. It was found that several small deletions encompassing amino acids 601-604 and 606-608 did not reduce cytotoxicity. Furthermore, two substitutions which altered amino acids 603-608 as well as two other substitutions within amino acids 606-608 of PE did not reduce cytotoxicity. Therefore, the sequence of amino acids in positions 602-608 did not appear to be important for cytotoxicity. However, deletions which removed arginine at 609 (pVC 49215 and pVC 49255) greatly reduced the cytotoxic action of PE. These results, together with the experiments in Table 1 showing that deletion of amino acids 612 and 613 abolish cytotoxicity, focused our attention on amino acids 609-613 which are situated at the carboxyl terminus of PE.

The role of arginine 609 was studied by either deleting it



or replacing it with several different amino acids. Replacement of arginine at 609 with another basic amino acid, lysine, retained the cytotoxic activity of PE (Table 3). However, deleting arginine at 609 (pVC 49115) or replacing it with glycine, glutamic acid or leucine reduced cytotoxicity about 6-10-fold. Thus, a basic amino acid appears to be important at position 609.

To study the sequence specificity of the last five amino acids of PE, several other mutant molecules were then constructed. In two of these, the order of the acidic amino acids at positions 610 and 611 was reversed and lysine 613 deleted (Table 4, pVC 49415 and pVC 49425). These molecules were fully active whether or not position 609 was a lysine or an arginine. A molecule was also created with a leucine at position 609 and an arginine at 612 (pVC 49435) that was inactive.

Although deletion of the terminal amino acid lysine at 613 did not affect cytotoxicity, it was suspected that other mutations in this position might affect cytotoxicity in a negative manner because of the low activity of various chimeric toxins in which the ligand was placed in peptide linkage at the carboxyl terminus of PE. Therefore, lysine<sup>613</sup> was converted to glutamine, asparagine or aspartate. All these mutations produced a less cytotoxic molecule (Table 5). Addition of 6 or 11 amino acids to the carboxyl terminus of PE also produced a less cytotoxic molecule (data not shown). However, replacement of lys<sup>613</sup> with the basic amino acid, arginine, did not decrease cytotoxicity. Thus, positions 609 and 613 both require a basic amino acid for full cytotoxic activity. There are two other lysine residues at the carboxyl end of PE; these are situated at positions 590 and 606. Both of these lysines could be converted to the uncharged amino acid glutamine without a decrease in cytotoxicity, indicating that a positively charged amino acid was not required at position 590 or 606 (Table 5).

Having shown the importance of particular amino acids at the carboxyl terminus of PE, it was determined that the five carboxyl terminal amino acids could be separated from the ADP ribosylation domain to regenerate an active toxin. As shown in Table 6, a fully active cytotoxic molecule could be generated from PE 609-613 (which is not cytotoxic) by the addition of amino acids 551-613, 567-613 or 598-613 of an intact PE to the carboxyl terminus of PE 609-613. Thus, the distance between the ADP ribosylation domain which ends around amino acid 600 and the essential amino acids at positions 609-613 was not critical and could be substantially increased without a decrease in cytotoxicity. Also shown in Table 6 is a PE molecule with the carboxyl terminus of RPHMPGDILK in place of PREDLK. This molecule, in which arg<sup>609</sup> and asp<sup>611</sup> were altered, was not cytotoxic. But attaching the last 16 amino acids of an intact PE molecule to give a carboxyl terminus of RPHMPGDPDYASQPGKP-PREDLK restored cytotoxicity to this molecule.

Furthermore, constructs were made in which a cDNA TGF was inserted at the carboxyl end of PE with an inactive carboxyl terminus (Table A pVC 478154E1-T) and an active carboxyl terminus (Table A, pVC 47355f-T and pVC 47395f-T). The constructs with good carboxyl termini were more than 50 times as cytotoxic to cells with EGF receptors (TGF $\alpha$  binds to the EGF receptor) as the ones with the bad carboxyl ends. This clearly indicates that for the highest cytotoxic activity, a suitable carboxyl end is an essential requirement.

Altogether the data presented herein demonstrate that the cytotoxic activity of a PE molecule that is inactive due to a deletion or modification within the carboxyl end can be

restored by attaching an intact carboxyl end. Hence, it is now possible to create active chimeric molecules by inserting a binding ligand such as TGF $\alpha$  at 608 within the carboxyl end of PE thus retaining the last five amino acids as REDLK.

Although it has been previously demonstrated that domain I of PE is the region responsible for cell binding, it was important to show that the mutations at the carboxyl end of PE that decreased cytotoxicity did not also somehow decrease cell binding. To test this, the ability of various mutant forms of PE to compete for the uptake of [<sup>3</sup>H]-PE was evaluated. As shown in FIG. 2, several PE mutants that had decreased cytotoxicity due to mutations at the carboxyl terminus of PE were just as able to compete for the uptake of [<sup>3</sup>H]-PE as authentic wild type of PE. In this competition assay, PE40 which has a deletion of domain I and PEGlu<sup>57</sup> were inactive as previously described (Jinno et al, supra).

These uptake results were confirmed using a fluorescence assay that measured the internalization of PE and various mutant PE molecules (FIG. 3). In this assay, cells are incubated with various toxins for 30 minutes to allow binding and internalization into endocytic vesicles. Molecules with a point mutation in domain I (PEglu<sup>57</sup>) or PE40 were not internalized. In contrast, all the other PE molecules, whether or not they contained mutations at the carboxyl end of domain III, were found to have bound and internalized into endocytic vesicles and other elements in the trans-Golgi system in the perinuclear area of the cells (FIG. 3, Panel B and D). These results clearly show that decreased cytotoxicity of carboxyl terminal mutants is not due to decreased receptor binding or cellular uptake of PE molecules.

In summary, the results presented herein clearly show that mutations at the carboxyl end of PE and particularly in the last five amino acids of PE result in a molecule with full ADP ribosylation activity, but greatly reduced cytotoxicity. The data show that the amino acid sequence at the carboxyl end of PE is Arg, Glu, Asp, Leu, Lys (REDLK, Table 2). The arginine at 609 can be replaced by lysine but non basic amino acids cannot be tolerated (Table 3). Lysine at 613 is not essential and can be deleted without loss of cytotoxic activity (Table 1), but it cannot be replaced with a non-basic amino acid (Table 5). Thus, having either ArgGluAspLeu or LysGluAspLeuLys at the carboxyl terminus produced a fully cytotoxic molecule (Table 4). A search of the literature for similar sequences that were present in other molecules and performed a specific biological function revealed that the sequence which retains newly formed proteins within the endoplasmic reticulum is LysAspGluLeu (Munro et al, 1987, *Cell* 48, 899-907). Therefore, several other mutant molecules were constructed, one of which contained the exact sequence previously described as being responsible for the retention of the protein in the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum (Table 4). It was found that a molecule ending with LysAspGluLeu (KDEL) was fully cytotoxic. Also a molecule ending in ArgAspGluLeu (RDEL) but not LeuAspGluArg (LDER) was fully active. These findings indicate that the successful entry of PE into the cytosol from an endocytic compartment requires interaction with the similar cellular component that helps retain proteins made by the cells within the endoplasmic reticulum. These findings also suggest that the sequence at the carboxyl end of PE acts as some type of recognition sequence to assist translocation of PE from an endocytic compartment into the cytosol. Other sequences that perform the same function would likewise increase the activity.

Of further significance was the finding that because the cell targeting ligands can be inserted at two cloning regions in the PE molecule (at the amino terminus as previously

described or near the carboxyl end as described herein), the same or different targeting ligands can be inserted at these two regions thereby increasing either cell binding, cytotoxicity or both. Different targeting molecules at each of the two cloning regions would enable the chimeric toxin to bind to two different types of receptors present on the same cell. This is important because some antigens on target cells do not internalize well and are, therefore, poor targets for immunotoxins. But, if the chimeric toxin or immunotoxin also binds to another antigen that is well internalized, specific cell killing is increased greatly.

It was further discovered during the modification of the carboxyl end of the PE that if the REDLK (single letter amino acid code) sequence is replaced with KDEL, the resulting molecule is about two fold more active. Even more spectacular was the finding that a molecule with three repeats of KDEL in place of REDLK, was three times as active (Table B) indicating that by adding KDEL or equivalent repeat sequences, chimeric toxins with enhanced cytotoxicity can be produced.

In short, the present invention for the first time shows that:

1. An appropriate carboxyl end sequence is absolutely required for cytotoxicity of the PE;
2. Deletion of as few as two amino acids from the carboxyl end of PE yields a molecule that contains full ADP ribosylation and receptor binding activity, but is nontoxic to target cells (Table 1);
3. Mutational analyses indicate that PE should possess a positively charged amino acid at 609, negatively charged amino acids at 610 and 611 and a leucine at 612;
4. Lysine at 613 can be deleted but cannot be substituted with several other amino acid residues;
5. Addition of random amino acid residues at the carboxyl end of PE produce relatively inactive molecules (data not shown);
6. Addition of at least 10 carboxyl end amino acids of PE to the PE molecules that are not cytotoxic due to mutations in the carboxyl end, restores full cytotoxic activity (Table 4);
7. Different targeting ligands at different ends (amino and carboxyl) provide the flexibility of producing better binding and cytotoxic PE molecules; and
8. Repeat "cytotoxic sequences" multiply the cytotoxicity in appropriate cases.

Of course, other target-specific immunotoxins are made similar to the method described herein supra by using appropriate recognition molecules, toxins and cytotoxic sequences including such modified recombinants as TGF $\alpha$ -PE40, CD4-PE40 and the like (See Table C). An example of a bifunctional toxin, cytotoxic for cells expressing two different receptors is now provided in accordance with the present invention to illustrate such constructions. It may be noted in this respect that conventional immunotoxins and chimeric toxins usually made in bacteria are ordinarily directed to only one receptor or antigen on target cells. The successful construction of an active chimeric toxin molecule containing more than one target recognizing entities, opens the possibility of producing chimeric molecules of greater versatility, flexibility and efficacy. FIG. 4 shows the sche-

matic construction of pJB370548 to produce a multipurpose chimeric protein containing two recognition molecules, TGF $\alpha$  and anti-Tac (Fv) for binding to cells expressing either EGF, IL2 or both. Table D shows a comparison of the cytotoxic activity of this novel multifunctional recombinant fusion protein compared to monofunctional entities tested against appropriate cells easily suggested to one of ordinary skill in the art.

A deposit of pJB

370548 has been made at the ATCC, Rockville, Md., on Apr. 30, 1990 under accession number.

The deposit shall be viably maintained, replacing it if becomes non-viable during the life of the patent, for a period of 30 years from the date of the deposit, for for 5 years from the last date of request for a sample of the deposit, whichever is longer, and upon issuance of the patent made available to the public without restriction in accordance with the provisions of the law. The Commissioner of the Patents and Trademarks, upon request, shall have access to the deposit.

Of course, a method of preparing a cytotoxic, recombinant PE in accordance with the present invention, comprises the steps of utilizing the plasmid described herein without alteration or modifying said plasmid to contain a desired DNA sequence and then functionally inserting said plasmid in an expression vector so that a desired cytotoxic recombinant PE is produced and then recovering the desired PE in a substantially pure form. It is noted that the procedures for modifying, expressing and obtaining the desired PE from the plasmids are quite standard in the art and easily suggested to one of ordinary skill, given the teachings contained herein.

It is understood that the examples and embodiments described herein are for illustrative purposes only and that various changes and modifications in light thereof will be suggested to persons skilled in the art and are to be included within the spirit and purview of this application and scope of the appended claims.

TABLE 1

Deletion analysis of the carboxyl terminus of PE				
Mutants				
amino acids present	amino acids deleted	Cytotoxicity	ADP ribosylation activity	
1-589	590-613	<0.1	0	
1-599	600-613	<0.1	20	
1-602	603-613	<0.1	100	
1-605	606-613	<0.1	100	
1-606	607-613	<0.1	100	
1-610	611-613	<0.1	100	
1-611	612,613	<0.1	100	
1-612	613	<0.1	100	
1-613		100		

Legend to Table 1. Mutant PE proteins were expressed in *E. coli* using T7 promoter based vector (Studier and Moffatt, 1986) and purified from the periplasm. All proteins contain a 3 amino acid (ala ala leu) extension at the amino terminus remaining after the processing of the OmpA signal sequence. These amino acids were not considered when assigning residue numbers to the above mutant proteins. Cytotoxicity was determined by assaying inhibition of protein synthesis on Swiss 3T3 mouse cells. All results are expressed as percent of the activity obtained with recombinant full length PE molecules. All the assays were done in duplicate and at least 2 separate clones were tested.

TABLE 2

Internal deletions and substitutions within the carboxyl terminus of PE.													
Location of the amino acids in PE													
Plasmid	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	Cytotoxicity
PVC	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3
45	A	S	Q	P	G	K	P	P	R	E	D	L	K
49215	A												100
49235	A												<0.1
49245	A	S	Q	P	G	K	P	P	R	E	D	L	K
49255	A	S	Q	P	G				R	E	D	L	K
4955	A	S	Q	P	G	P	K	P	R	E	D	L	K
4935	A	S	G	S	H	L	A	A	R	E	D	L	K
4955	A	S	E	G	K	S	S	G	R	E	D	L	K
49315	A	S	Q	P	G	M	M	M	R	E	D	L	K

Mutant PE proteins were expressed in *E. coli* and purified from the periplasm. ADP-ribosylation activities of all the mutants were indistinguishable from the full length PE. Amino acids within the carboxyl end of PE (601-613) are shown as single letter code. The substitutions have been underlined.

TABLE 3

Mutations at position 609 of PE			
Plasmid (pVC)	Mutant Proteins	Cytotoxicity (% of PE)	
49115	PEΔ609	12	
49125	PE <sub>609</sub> <sup>609</sup>	100	
4915	PE <sub>609</sub> <sup>609</sup>	10	
49135	PE <sub>609</sub> <sup>609</sup>	16	
49155	PE <sub>609</sub> <sup>609</sup>	15	

Mutant PE proteins were expressed in *E. coli* and purified from the periplasm. Substitutions are shown as replacement amino acids (also see Tables 1 and 2).

TABLE 4

Sequence specificity of last 5 amino acids of PE						
Location of the amino acid in PE						
Plasmids	609	610	611	612	613	Cytotoxicity (% of PE)
(PVC)						
45	R	E	D	L	K	100
49125	K	E	D	L	K	100
4215	R	E	D	L		100
49415	K	D	E	L		100
49425	R	D	E	L		100
49435	L	D	E	R		<0.03

For details see legend to Tables 1 and 2.

TABLE 5

Mutations of the lysines residues 590, 606 and 613 in the carboxyl terminal domain of PE			
Mutants	Cytotoxicity (% of PE)	ADP-ribosylation (% of PE)	
PEΔ <sup>613</sup>	100	100	
PEΔ <sup>613</sup>	100	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	1	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	1	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	1	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	100	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	100	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	100	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	100	100	
PE <sub>613</sub> <sup>613</sup>	100	100	

Analyses were performed as described in Tables 1 and 2.

TABLE 6

Addition of various portions of PE carboxyl terminus to PEΔ609-613			
Plasmid (pVC)	Mutant Proteins	Cytotoxicity (% of PE)	ADP-ribosylation activity (% of PE)
4905	PEΔ609-613	<0.1	100
4975	PEΔ609-613+551-613	100	100
4985	PEΔ609-613+567-613	100	100
4995	PEΔ609-613+598-613	100	100
4715	PEΔ609-613	<0.1	100
	RPHMPGLILK		
47195	PEΔ608-613	50	100
	RPHMPGD+598-613		

Legend to Table 6. A plasmid pVC4915 with a SmaI site between codons 608 and 609 of PE was created and various portions of the carboxyl terminus were attached after codon 608. pVC4995 was constructed using synthetic oligonucleotides. The last 16 amino acids (598-613) of PE consists of PDYASQPGKPPREDLK (also see Table 1 and 2). Δ means the deletion of amino acids following the symbol.

TABLE A

Cytotoxic activity on A431 cells of various carboxy terminal insertions of TGFα into PE.			
Plasmid	Protein*	IP <sub>30</sub> (ng/ml) <sup>b</sup>	
55	pVC47315/ PE 1-607 RPHMA (TGFα)	>25	
	4E(f+)-IT AHMPFDILK		
	pVC47395/ PE 1-607 RPHMA (TGFα)	0.5	
	4E(f+)-IT AHMPDIPDYASOPGKPPREDLK		
	pVC47355/ PE 1-607 RPHMA (TGFα)	0.5	
	4E(f+)-IT AHMPGKPPREDLK		

\*Fusion proteins were partially purified from periplasm. SDS-PAGE indicated that the fusion proteins were 20-30% pure. Residues normally present in PE are underlined.

<sup>b</sup>IP<sub>30</sub> is the concentration of fusion protein (estimated as total protein concentration) that is required to inhibit protein synthesis by 50 percent as compared to control where no toxin was added. Protein synthesis was measured by 3H-leucine incorporation.

TABLE B

Cytotoxic activity on Swiss 3T3 cells of various PE derivatives		
Plasmid	Protein*	ID <sub>50</sub> (ng/ml)
pVC 45f-T	FE 1-608 REDLK	1.6
pVC 49415f-T	FE 1-608 KDEL	0.76
pSS 49445f-T	FE 1-608 KDELKDELKDEL	0.55

\*PE proteins were purified on Mono Q columns and were approximately 90% pure.

<sup>b</sup>Same as Table A.

TABLE C

I. ACTIVITY OF TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 AND KDEL DERIVATIVES (ID <sub>50</sub> ) ON CELLS WITH EGF RECEPTORS				
	A431 ng/ml	KB ng/ml	OVCAR 3 ng/ml	HUT 102 ng/ml
TGF $\alpha$ -PE40	.35	.96	5.4	>312
TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 KDEL*	.44	.37	.84	>312
TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 (KDEL) <sup>b</sup> **	.034	.076	1.1	>312
	.022			

\*TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 (253-609 KDEL).

\*\*TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 (253-609 KDEL KDEL KDEL).

This TABLE shows that replacing the last 5 amino acids of TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 with KDEL or (KDEL)<sub>3</sub> increases its activity 3 to 10-fold.

#### II. CYTOTOXICITY OF CD4-PE40 DERIVATIVES ON ENV-5 CELLS THAT EXPRESS gp120 OF HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS.

PROTEIN	ID <sub>50</sub> (ng/ml)
CD4-PE40+REDLK	2.5
CD4-PE40+KDEL	0.5
CD4-PE40+(KDEL) <sub>3</sub>	0.65

Increased cytotoxicity of CD4-PE40 on target cells expressing HIV gp120 produced by replacing the last 5 amino acids of CD4-PE40 with KDEL or (KDEL)<sub>3</sub>. ENV-5 cells express gp120.

TABLE D

Comparison of cytotoxic activity of bifunctional and monofunctional recombinant fusion proteins.

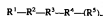
	ID <sub>50</sub> <sup>a</sup> (ng/ml)	
	HUT102	A431
TGF $\alpha$ -anti-Tac(Fv)-PE40	7.8	12.0
Anti-Tac(Fv)-PE40	2.3	~500
TGF $\alpha$ -PE40	>500	0.5

<sup>a</sup>ID<sub>50</sub> is the concentration of the fusion protein that gave 50% inhibition of protein synthesis.

#### What is claimed is:

1. A fusion protein comprising a recombinant Pseudomonas exotoxin (PE) molecule, a first recognition moiety for binding a target cell, and a carboxyl terminal sequence of 4 to 16 residues which permits translocation of said fusion protein into the target cell cytosol, the first recognition moiety being inserted in domain III of PE after residue 600 and before residue 613.

2. The fusion protein of claim 1, wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence comprises, in a direction from the amino terminus to the carboxyl terminus, the following amino acid residues:



wherein,

R<sup>1</sup> is a positively charged amino acid residue;

R<sup>2</sup> is a negatively charged amino acid residue;

R<sup>3</sup> is a negatively charged amino acid residue;

R<sup>4</sup> is L; and

R<sup>5</sup> is a positively charged amino acid residue; and wherein n is zero or 1.

3. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of R and K.

4. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of E and D.

5. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein R<sup>3</sup> is selected from the group consisting of D and E.

6. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein n is 1 and R<sup>5</sup> is selected from the group consisting of K and R.

7. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is selected from the group consisting of REDLK, KEDLK, REDLR, REDL, and KDEL.

8. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is KDELKDELKDEL.

9. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein the first recognition molecule is an antibody or a portion of an antibody which recognizes the target cell.

10. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein the first recognition molecule is selected from the group consisting of a growth factor, lymphokine, cytokine, and a hormone.

11. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein the first recognition molecule is TGF $\alpha$  or CD4.

12. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein the first recognition molecule is inserted after residue 607 of the PE molecule.

13. The fusion protein of claim 2, wherein a second recognition molecule is inserted in the toxin molecule.

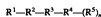
14. The fusion protein of claim 13, wherein the second recognition molecule is different from the first recognition molecule.

15. The fusion protein of claim 13, wherein the second recognition molecule is anti-Tac (Fv).

16. The fusion protein of claim 13, wherein the recombinant PE molecule is TGF $\alpha$ -anti-Tac(Fv)-PE40.

17. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a fusion protein comprising a recombinant Pseudomonas exotoxin (PE) molecule, a first recognition moiety for binding a target cell, and a carboxyl terminal sequence of 4 to 16 residues which permits translocation of said fusion protein into the target cell cytosol, the first recognition moiety being inserted in domain III of PE after residue 600 and before residue 613.

18. The composition of claim 17, wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence comprises, in a direction from the amino terminus to the carboxyl terminus, the following amino acid residues:



wherein,

R<sup>1</sup> is a positively charged amino acid residue;

R<sup>2</sup> is a negatively charged amino acid residue;

R<sup>3</sup> is a negatively charged amino acid residue;

R<sup>4</sup> is L; and

R<sup>5</sup> is a positively charged amino acid residue; and wherein n is zero or 1.

19. The composition of claim 17, wherein the carboxyl terminal residues are selected from the group consisting of REDLK, KEDLK, REDLR, REDL, and KDEL.

20. The fusion protein of claim 7 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is REDLK.

## 15

21. The fusion protein of claim 7 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is KEDLK.

22. The fusion protein of claim 7 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is REDLR.

23. The fusion protein of claim 7 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is REDL.

24. The fusion protein of claim 7 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is KDEL.

25. The fusion protein of claim 19 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is REDLK.

## 16

26. The composition of claim 19 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is KEDLK.

27. The composition of claim 19 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is REDLR.

28. The composition of claim 19 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is REDL.

29. The fusion protein of claim 19 wherein the carboxyl terminal sequence is KDEL.

\* \* \* \* \*

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT A**


[Research Tools](#)
[Reviews](#)
[Journal Collection](#)
[News & Comment](#)
[Books & Labware](#)
[Science Jobs](#)
[Web Links](#)
[research.bmn.com](#)
[Latest Updates](#)
[MEDLINE](#)
[Swiss Prot](#)
[Technical Tips](#)
[Structures Database](#)
[Mouse Knockout](#)
[Section Search](#)
[My BMN](#)
[Exit](#)
[Feedback](#)
[Help](#)

## MEDLINE

### ► Search

[Browse by Journal](#)
[Browse MESH](#)
[Preferences](#)
[About MEDLINE](#)

### Quick Site Search

 [GO](#)
[BioMedNet](#)
[Advanced site search](#)

## Medline

[Simple](#) [Advanced](#) [Citation](#) [History](#) [Results](#) [Record](#)

### Failure of short-term CD4-PE40 infusions to reduce virus load in human immunodeficiency virus-infected persons.

Ramachandran RV, Katzenstein DA, Wood R, Balts DH, Merigan TC  
J Infect Dis 1994 Oct 170:1009-13

BROWSE : [J Infect Dis](#) • [Volume 170](#) • [Issue 4](#)

VIEW : [MEDLINE](#), [full MEDLINE](#), [related records](#)

### Abstract

The safety, immunologic, and antiviral effects of a recombinant biologic product that combines the second and third domains of the CD4 molecule and Pseudomonas exotoxin A (PE40) were evaluated in 21 human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected subjects in a phase III open-label dose-ranging study. Subjects with CD4+ lymphocyte counts of 100-500/mm<sup>3</sup> received CD4-PE40 at 40, 80, or 160 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup> by infusion three to seven times over 10 days. At the maximum tolerated dose (80 micrograms/m<sup>2</sup>), peak CD4-PE40 levels were 65-130 ng/mL with a serum half-life of 3.6 +/- 1.5 h. Toxicity, primarily increased hepatic transaminases, was dose-related and reversible. HIV DNA proviral levels in peripheral blood mononuclear cells and plasma HIV RNA remained stable during and after CD4-PE40 infusions. The relative resistance of clinical isolates of HIV, limits of the tolerated dose, and the immunogenicity and short half-life of the protein may explain the lack of in vivo antiviral effect of CD4-PE40.

### MeSH

Adult; Antigens, CD4; CD4-Positive T-Lymphocytes; DNA, Viral; Drug Administration Schedule; Exotoxins; HIV; HIV Seropositivity; Human; Immunotoxins; Infusions, Intravenous; Proviruses; Pseudomonas aeruginosa; RNA, Viral; Support, Non-U.S. Gov't; Treatment Failure

### Author Address

Center for AIDS Research, Stanford University Medical Center, California 94305.


**BioMedNet**
[Information for Advertisers](#)
[Research Tools](#)
[Reviews](#)
[Journal Collection](#)
[News & Comment](#)
[Books & Labware](#)
[Science Jobs](#)
[Web Links](#)

© Elsevier Science Limited 2002

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT B**





research.bmn.com

My BMN

Exit

Feedback

Help

## MEDLINE

## ► Search

[Browse by Journal](#)[Browse MESH](#)[Preferences](#)[About MEDLINE](#)

Quick Site Search



Advanced site search

Research  
Tools

Reviews

Journal  
CollectionNews &  
CommentBooks &  
LabwareScience  
JobsWeb  
LinksLatest  
Updates

MEDLINE

Swiss  
ProtTechnical  
TipsStructures  
DatabaseMouse  
Knockout

 Section  
Search

## Medline

[Simple](#)
[Advanced](#)
[Citation](#)
[History](#)
[Results](#)
[Record](#)

### Use of recombinant soluble CD4 Pseudomonas exotoxin, a novel immunotoxin, for treatment of persons infected with human immunodeficiency virus.

Davey RT, Boenning CM, Herpin BR, Batts DH, Metcalf JA, Wathen I, Cox SR, Polis MA, Kovacs JA, Fallon J

J Infect Dis 1994 Nov 170:1180-8

BROWSE : J Infect Dis • Volume 170 • Issue 5

VIEW : MEDLINE, full MEDLINE, related records

## Abstract

Single and multiple doses of sCD4-PE40, a soluble recombinant fusion toxin selectively toxic to gp120-expressing cells, were evaluated in persons infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1). Seventeen of 24 patients who completed a single-dose safety trial were given either 1, 5, 10, or 15 micrograms/kg of sCD4-PE40 by intravenous bolus once a month for 2 months, then weekly for 6 weeks. The weekly maximally tolerated dose was 10 micrograms/kg. The major toxicity was a transient dose-dependent elevation in hepatic aminotransferases peaking 48 h after infusion. Anti-Pseudomonas exotoxin antibody developed in 58% of recipients, and sera from 13 of 17 showed neutralizing activity against sCD4-PE40. No consistent changes in immunologic or virologic markers were observed. Weekly infusions of < or = 10 micrograms/kg of sCD4-PE40 are generally well tolerated, but additional studies correlating optimal dosing and frequency of administration with efficacy will be needed to define the role of this novel agent in the management of HIV-1-infected patients.

## MeSH

Adolescence; Adult; Antigens, CD4; Antiviral Agents; Exotoxins; HIV Infections; Human; Immunotoxins; Middle Age; Recombinant Proteins; Single-Blind Method; Support, Non-U.S. Gov't; Support, U.S. Gov't, P.H.S.

## Author Address

National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland 20892.



BioMedNet

Information for Advertisers

Research  
Tools

Reviews

Journal  
CollectionNews &  
CommentBooks &  
LabwareScience  
JobsWeb  
Links

© Elsevier Science Limited 2002

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT C**

## Perspective

# Reconsidering targeted toxins to eliminate HIV infection: You gotta have HAART

Edward A. Berger<sup>\*†</sup>, Bernard Moss<sup>\*</sup>, and Ira Pastan<sup>‡</sup>

<sup>\*</sup>Laboratory of Viral Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, and <sup>‡</sup>Laboratory of Molecular Biology, National Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD 20892

Edited by Anthony S. Fauci, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, Bethesda, MD, and approved August 12, 1998 (received for review June 16, 1998)

**ABSTRACT** The success of highly active anti-retroviral therapy (HAART) has inspired new concepts for eliminating HIV from infected individuals. A major obstacle is the persistence of long-lived reservoirs of latently infected cells that might become activated at some time after cessation of therapy. We propose that, in the context of treatment strategies to deliberately activate and eliminate these reservoirs, hybrid toxins targeted to kill HIV-infected cells be reconsidered in combination with HAART. Such combinations might also prove valuable in protocols aimed at preventing mother-to-child transmission and establishment of infection immediately after exposure to HIV. We suggest experimental approaches *in vitro* and in animal models to test various issues related to safety and efficacy of this concept.

Highly active anti-retroviral therapy (HAART), involving combination treatment with drugs that block different steps in the viral replication cycle (e.g., reverse transcriptase inhibitors plus protease inhibitors), has improved dramatically the health of many individuals infected with HIV (1). Despite these advances, recent analyses of peripheral blood and lymph nodes have revealed the presence of reservoirs of resting CD4<sup>+</sup> memory T cells harboring latent replication-competent provirus (refs. 2–8; reviewed in refs. 9–11). Although such reservoirs contain exceedingly small numbers of cells, they are generated very early after primary infection and persist with no significant change after 2 years of HAART. The latently infected cells are likely to activate spontaneously at some point after termination of HAART and therefore are considered to be a major obstacle to eradication of HIV from the body. This awareness has engendered the notion of deliberately “flushing out” the reservoirs by treating HAART patients with agents that activate virus expression from latently infected cells (10–12). The idea is that the virions produced on activation will be prevented by HAART from infecting new cells; it is presumed that the newly activated cells then will be eliminated by natural mechanisms such as the cytopathic effect of the virus, immune effector mechanisms, etc. (9–11). We propose that, in considering such strategies, these natural elimination mechanisms can be accelerated aggressively by using targeted toxins that selectively kill activated HIV-infected cells. Such agents may also be useful components of cocktails aimed at preventing establishment of infection in newly exposed individuals.

### Hybrid Toxins Targeted to HIV-Infected Cells

During the past decade, several types of anti-HIV hybrid protein toxins have been produced by molecular genetic and

biochemical methodologies (13–15). In each case, the hybrid protein contains a binding domain that targets the agent to the HIV envelope glycoprotein (Env) expressed on the surface of the infected cell and a cytotoxic domain that actively kills the cell on internalization. The hybrid toxins are constructed by substituting the normal cell binding region of the native toxin with an Env-binding domain. The Env-binding moieties used have included the extracellular regions of CD4 as well as Fab regions of anti-Env antibodies (directed against either the external subunit gp120 or the transmembrane subunit gp41). The cytotoxic domains have been derived from natural protein toxins such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A (PE), ricin, and diphtheria toxin.

To date, only one of these hybrid toxins has been tested in humans: the genetically engineered single chain protein CD4-PE40 (soluble CD4 linked to the translocation and cell killing domains of PE). For this reason, we focus on this agent, though many of our arguments also apply to other Env-targeted hybrid toxins. CD4-PE40 displays the following properties *in vitro*: cytotoxic activity against cells expressing Envs of HIV-1, HIV-2 and simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) (16–19), high potency and specificity for killing HIV-1-infected cells with negligible effects on major histocompatibility complex Class II-expressing cells (16, 18), requirement for HIV-1 induction in a latently infected cell line (18), suppression of spreading HIV-1 infection in an acutely infected T cell line (17) and in cultures of primary T lymphocytes or macrophages (20–22), highly synergistic activity with reverse transcriptase inhibitors (23), and potent activity against primary HIV-1 strains, including those resistant to neutralization by soluble CD4 (21, 22). These *in vitro* properties, coupled with acceptable toxicity and pharmacokinetic profiles in animal studies, supported testing this agent in HIV-infected people.

### Disappointing Results in Phase 1 Clinical Trials

The high hopes from the promising preclinical findings were dashed in the initial Phase I trials with HIV-infected patients (24, 25). The toxin produced dose-limiting hepatotoxicity; at the low doses that were tolerated (10 µg/kg), the peak plasma levels of CD4-PE40 remained below concentrations shown to be efficacious *in vitro*. The significant but reversible hepatotoxicity greatly diminished enthusiasm for CD4-PE40 in par-

The publication costs of this article were defrayed in part by page charge payment. This article must therefore be hereby marked “advertisement” in accordance with 18 U.S.C. §1734 solely to indicate this fact.

0027-8424/98/9511511-3\$05.00/0

PNAS is available online at www.pnas.org.

Abbreviations: HAART, highly active anti-retroviral therapy; Env, HIV envelope glycoprotein; PE, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A; SIV, simian immunodeficiency virus; CD4-PE40, soluble CD4 linked to the effector domains of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A.

<sup>†</sup>To whom reprint requests should be addressed at: Laboratory of Viral Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, Building 4, Room 236, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD 20892. e-mail: edward.berger@nih.gov.

ticular and for Env-targeted toxins in general. The CD4-PE40 clinical program was terminated.

### A New Context Suggests a New Concept: Testable Hypotheses

We propose that recent developments with HAART present new opportunities for exploring the therapeutic utility of Env-targeted hybrid toxins to help eradicate residual HIV-infected cell reservoirs. We hypothesize a plausible mechanism for the CD4-PE40 hepatotoxicity observed in HIV-infected people and suggest that this problem may not occur in patients with the very low viral loads achieved by HAART. We present rationales based on *in vitro* data suggesting that Env-targeted toxins might accelerate the elimination of infected cell reservoirs beyond the rates caused by natural mechanisms. These agents may also be useful components of drug cocktails aimed at preventing postexposure infection and mother-to-child transmission. Of most importance, many of these notions are subject to experimental testing *in vitro* and in animal models.

The first issue concerns the hepatotoxicity with low doses of CD4-PE40 observed in Phase I clinical trials. This problem was unexpected because preclinical toxicity studies in rodents and monkeys indicated much higher tolerated doses. Furthermore, it is now clear that hepatotoxicity is not a general property of PE derivatives in humans; several anticancer clinical trials conducted with PE-based immunotoxins have revealed striking antitumor responses without hepatotoxicity (26). Why, then, was hepatotoxicity encountered with low doses of CD4-PE40 in clinical trials with HIV-infected people? We propose that the HIV infection, particularly the high virus load, is the culprit. HIV-infected individuals likely produce free gp120 that is shed from virions or infected cells. Shedding of gp120 has been studied extensively *in vitro*; furthermore, evidence for free gp120 in sera of infected individuals has been reported, although precise measurements are confounded by the formation of immune complexes as well as by the association of released gp120 with circulating CD4<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes (reviewed in refs. 27–29). We hypothesize that, in HIV-infected patients treated with CD4-PE40, some of the chimeric toxin associates with shed gp120. Because gp120 is glycosylated extensively and contains highly diverse oligosaccharide chains (30), the complex likely would be a substrate for the human hepatocyte asialoglycoprotein receptor, which internalizes glycoproteins containing terminal galactose or N-acetylglucosamine residues (31). The result would be the serious side effect of hepatocyte killing. Moreover, gp120/CD4-PE40 complexes bound to anti-gp120 antibodies might also contribute to liver damage.

According to this hypothesis, hepatotoxicity should not be a major problem in HAART patients because the low viral loads presumably would produce minimal amounts of free gp120. Even on induction of virus expression from latently infected memory T lymphocytes, the newly produced free gp120 is unlikely to be problematic because the number of such cells is much smaller than the number of virus-producing T lymphocytes in patients before HAART (ref. 3; also T.-W. Chun, personal communication); moreover, the newly produced gp120 will have accumulated only during the relatively short period after induction, in contrast with the prolonged duration of gp120 production before therapy. We also suggest that gp120-mediated toxicity would not be problematic when given along with HAART to newly exposed individuals because they should not yet have produced significant amounts of free gp120.

To test this model of CD4-PE40-mediated hepatotoxicity, we propose that effects of the agent be compared in animals with high vs. low levels of free gp120; we predict that hepatotoxicity will be much less severe in the latter case. There are several experimental paradigms in which this question can be

examined, including comparison of CD4-PE40 hepatotoxicity in uninfected vs. chronically HIV-infected severe combined immunodeficient-hu mice or SIV-infected rhesus macaques. Perhaps more important is to use these systems to compare animals with the normal high viral loads occurring during chronic infection vs. the reduced loads achieved with potent antiviral therapy, e.g., HAART in HIV-infected severe combined immunodeficient-hu mice (32) or reverse transcriptase inhibitor therapy in SIV-infected macaques (33). A related analysis would compare in chronically infected animals the effects of hybrid toxins targeted to gp120 (e.g., CD4-PE40 and gp120-targeted immunotoxins) versus those targeted to gp41; according to our model, the latter agents would not produce hepatotoxicity even in animals with high virus load because gp41 is not released spontaneously from the membrane. In another approach, uninfected animals can be given CD4-PE40 without or with soluble gp120 to test directly whether hepatotoxicity depends on both proteins. Together, these experiments should provide important insights into whether the hepatotoxicity of CD4-PE40 is associated with high viral load, and in particular with free gp120.

HAART therapy also provides opportunities to test the therapeutic potential of Env-targeted hybrid toxins to eradicate residual infected cells. The idea is to augment their natural rates of decay, which are presumed to reflect the viral cytopathic effect and host effector mechanisms (9–11). Several previous *in vitro* studies are promising in this regard. CD4-PE40 (but not soluble CD4) markedly inhibited the spread of infection in various target cell types (17, 20–23), including primary T lymphocytes and macrophages acutely infected with primary HIV-1 strains; the interpretation of these findings is that the toxin accelerates the killing of infected cells beyond the rates associated with the viral cytopathic effect. The results with macrophages are particularly striking because these cells are refractory to HIV-mediated killing during productive infection and are thought to represent an important viral reservoir with markedly slower decay kinetics compared with CD4<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes (9). Also of note are the promising *in vitro* results indicating highly synergistic effects of CD4-PE40 and reverse transcriptase inhibitors (23). CD4-PE40 plus 3'-azido-3'-dideoxythymidine or 2',3'-dideoxyinosine completely inhibited acute virus replication and prevented virus-mediated killing of the CD4<sup>+</sup> target T cell population; moreover, continuation of the culture after cessation of drug treatment indicated that the infection had been eliminated completely. By contrast, each agent alone suppressed virus replication during the treatment period, but the protective effects were reversed on drug removal. These results highlight the potential value of combination treatment involving a drug(s) that inhibits HIV replication plus another that selectively kills the infected cells. Taken together, these earlier studies provide impetus for considering Env-targeted toxins to augment HAART, particularly in the context of protocols to deliberately activate virus production from latently infected cell reservoirs. These agents, in combination with other antiretrovirals, may also diminish the frequency of postexposure infection and mother-to-child transmission.

We propose additional lines of *in vitro* and *in vivo* study. Experiments can be designed to optimize the *ex vivo* activation of latently infected T lymphocytes obtained from HAART patients and to test *ex vivo* whether an Env-targeted toxin in combination with continued HAART promotes or accelerates killing of the activated cells (similar to the studies noted above with acutely infected T cells). As an *in vivo* parallel to the previous *in vitro* success with combination treatment, we propose examination of the combined effects of HAART and Env-targeted toxins in HIV-infected severe combined immunodeficient-hu mice or SIV-infected macaques. Regarding efforts to deliberately activate latently infected cells, *in vitro* experiments would guide the choice of the most promising

modes of activation. Such experiments would suggest whether Env-targeted toxins in the presence of HAAAT can eradicate virus from infected animals. Finally, the ability of the targeted toxins to augment other antiretrovirals in preventing infection can be examined in the HIV/severe combined immunodeficient-hu mouse and the SiV/macaque models. Favorable results in these *in vitro* and *in vivo* systems would set the stage for safety and efficacy trials of Env-targeted toxins as components of therapeutic and prophylactic protocols against HIV.

This work was funded in part by the National Institutes of Health Intramural AIDS Targeted Antiviral Program.

- Volberding, P. A. & Deeks, S. G. (1998) *J. Am. Med. Assoc.* **279**, 1343–1344.
- Chun, T.-W., Finzi, D., Margolick, J., Chadwick, K., Schwartz, D. & Siliciano, R. F. (1995) *Nat. Med.* **1**, 1284–1290.
- Chun, T.-W., Carruth, L., Finzi, D., Shen, X., DiGiuseppe, J. A., Taylor, H., Hermankova, M., Chadwick, K., Margolick, J., Quinn, T. C., et al. (1997) *Nature (London)* **387**, 183–188.
- Perelson, A. S., Essunger, P., Cao, Y., Vesanen, M., Hurley, A., Saksela, K., Markowitz, M. & Ho, D. D. (1997) *Nature (London)* **387**, 188–191.
- Wong, J. K., Hezareh, M., Gunthard, H. F., Havlir, D. V., Ignacio, C. C., Spina, C. A. & Richman, D. D. (1997) *Science* **278**, 1291–1295.
- Finzi, D., Hermankova, M., Pierson, T., Carruth, L. M., Buck, C., Chaisson, R. E., Quinn, T. C., Chadwick, K., Margolick, J., Brookmeyer, R., et al. (1997) *Science* **278**, 1295–1300.
- Chun, T.-W., Stuyver, L., Mizell, S. B., Ehler, L. A., Mican, J. A. M., Baseler, M., Lloyd, A. L., Nowak, M. A. & Fauci, A. S. (1997) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **94**, 13193–13197.
- Chun, T.-W., Engel, D., Berrey, M. M., Shea, T., Corey, L. & Fauci, A. S. (1998) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **95**, 8869–8873.
- Finzi, D. & Siliciano, R. F. (1998) *Cell* **93**, 665–671.
- Ho, D. D. (1998) *Science* **280**, 1866–1867.
- Cohen, O. J. & Fauci, A. S. (1998) *J. Am. Med. Assoc.* **280**, 87–88.
- Cohen, J. (1998) *Science* **279**, 1854–1855.
- Pastan, I., Chaudhary, V. & FitzGerald, D. J. (1992) *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* **61**, 331–354.
- Pincus, S. H. (1996) *Antiviral Res.* **33**, 1–9.
- Thrusch, G. R., Lark, L. R., Clinchy, B. C. & Viretta, E. S. (1996) *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* **14**, 49–71.
- Chaudhary, V. K., Mizukami, T., Fuerst, T. R., FitzGerald, D. J., Moss, B., Pastan, I. & Berger, E. A. (1988) *Nature (London)* **335**, 369–372.
- Berger, E. A., Clouse, K. A., Chaudhary, V. K., Chakrabarti, S., FitzGerald, D. J., Pastan, I. & Moss, B. (1989) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **86**, 9539–9543.
- Berger, E. A., Chaudhary, V. K., Clouse, K. A., Jaraquemada, D., Nicholas, J. A., Rubino, K. L., FitzGerald, D. J., Pastan, I. & Moss, B. (1990) *AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses* **6**, 795–804.
- Ashorn, P., Moss, B. & Berger, E. A. (1992) *J. Acquired Immune Defic. Syndr.* **5**, 70–77.
- Ashorn, P., Englund, G., Martin, M. A., Moss, B. & Berger, E. A. (1991) *J. Infect. Dis.* **163**, 703–709.
- Verhoef, J., Gekker, G., Erice, A., Peterson, P. K. & Balfour, H. H. (1992) *Eur. J. Clin. Microbiol. Infect. Dis.* **11**, 715–721.
- Kennedy, P. E., Moss, B. & Berger, E. A. (1993) *Virology* **192**, 375–379.
- Ashorn, P., Moss, B., Weinstein, J. N., Chaudhary, V. K., FitzGerald, D. J., Pastan, I. & Berger, E. A. (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **87**, 8889–8893.
- Ramachandran, R. V., Katzenstein, D. A., Wood, R., Batts, D. H. & Merigan, T. C. (1994) *J. Infect. Dis.* **170**, 1009–1013.
- Davey, R. T., Boenning, C. M., Herpin, B. R., Batts, D. H., Metcalf, J. A., Wathen, L., Cox, S. R., Polis, M. A., Kovacs, J. A., Falloon, J., et al. (1994) *J. Infect. Dis.* **170**, 1180–1188.
- Pai, L. H., Wittes, R., Setser, A., Willingham, M. C. & Pastan, I. (1996) *Nat. Med.* **2**, 350–353.
- Moore, J. F., Jameson, B. A., Weiss, R. A. & Sattentau, Q. J. (1993) in *Viral Fusion Mechanisms*, ed. Bentz, J. (CRC, Boca Raton, FL), pp. 233–289.
- Siliciano, R. F. (1996) *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* **205**, 159–179.
- Chirmule, N. & Pabwa, S. (1996) *Microbiol. Rev.* **60**, 386–406.
- Mizuuchi, T., Matthews, T. J., Kato, M., Hamako, J., Titani, K., Solomon, J. & Feizi, T. (1990) *J. Biol. Chem.* **265**, 8519–8524.
- Stockert, R. J., Morell, A. G. & Ashwell, G. (1991) *Targeted Diagn. Ther.* **4**, 41–64.
- Petitoello-Mantovani, M., Kollmann, T. R., Katopodis, N. F., Raker, C., Kim, A., Yurasov, S., Wiltshire, H. & Goldstein, H. (1998) *J. Infect. Dis.* **177**, 337–346.
- Tsai, C.-C., Follis, K. E., Beck, T. W., Sabo, A., Bischofberger, N. & Dailey, P. J. (1997) *AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses* **13**, 707–712.

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT D**

# Chimeric Toxins Targeted to the Human Immunodeficiency Virus Type 1 Envelope Glycoprotein Augment the In Vivo Activity of Combination Antiretroviral Therapy in thyl/liv-SCID-Hu Mice

Harris Goldstein,<sup>1,2</sup> Massimo Pettoello-Mantovani,<sup>2</sup>  
Tapan K. Bera,<sup>3</sup> Ira H. Pastan,<sup>3</sup> and Edward A. Berger<sup>4</sup>

Departments of <sup>1</sup>Pediatrics and of <sup>2</sup>Microbiology and Immunology, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, New York; <sup>3</sup>Laboratory of Molecular Biology, National Cancer Institute, and <sup>4</sup>Laboratory of Viral Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), which combines multiple inhibitors of essential human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) enzymes, induces dramatic and sustained viral load reductions in many people infected with HIV-1. However, reservoirs of infected cells capable of producing replication-competent virus persist even after years of HAART, preventing elimination of infection. CD4-PE40 and 3B3(Fv)-PE38, chimeric toxins designed to target the HIV envelope (Env), represent a complementary class of agents that selectively kill productively infected cells. To investigate whether these Env-targeted toxins might serve as adjuncts to HAART for the elimination of infected cells, we tested their ability to augment HAART efficacy in vivo by using a thyl/liv SCID-hu mouse model. CD4-PE40 and 3B3(Fv)-PE38 markedly enhanced the capacity of HAART to suppress acute HIV-1 infection and improved HAART-mediated viral load reduction in mice with established HIV-1 infection. These results represent the first demonstration of in vivo anti-HIV-1 efficacy for Env-targeted toxins and support their potential therapeutic utility in combination with HAART.

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), which combines multiple inhibitors of essential enzymes of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1), promotes dramatic and sustained viral load reductions in plasma and tissues of many HIV-1-infected persons [1]. The associated clinical improvements and reduced death rates have transformed perspectives

on HIV-1 treatment. However, it has become clear that HAART does not eradicate HIV-1 infection from the body. Reservoirs of cells harboring replication-competent virus persist in blood, lymphoid tissue, and the male genital tract even after years of treatment [2–7]; moreover, low level HIV-1 replication continues in the face of suppressive HAART [4, 8–16]. These persistent virus sources are presumed to make major contributions to the rapid HIV-1 rebound observed after cessation of therapy [17–20] and are therefore considered the major barriers to eliminating infection.

Hybrid protein toxins designed to target the HIV Env glycoprotein on the surface of productively infected cells are a complementary class of anti-HIV agents [21]. Their potent activities result not from blocking of virus replication, but from selective killing of infected cells. Such proteins contain an Env-binding moiety such as CD4 or an anti-Env antibody, linked to the effector domains of a protein toxin such as *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A (PE), ricin, or diphtheria toxin. To date, only 1 Env-targeted toxin has been tested in human clinical trials: a recombinant protein designated CD4-PE40 that contains a region of CD4 linked to the translocation and cytotoxic moieties of PE [22]. Early studies in vitro indicated highly desirable anti-HIV-1 properties, alone and in combination with reverse transcriptase inhibitors (see [23] for original citations). However, disappointing results from phase I trials conducted in the pre-HAART era [24, 25] caused this approach to be abandoned. With the subsequent development of HAART and the awareness of the need to eliminate the long-lived infected cell res-

Received 8 September 1999; revised 8 December 1999; electronically published 20 March 2000.

Presented in part: The Keystone Symposium on AIDS Pathogenesis, January 1999, Keystone, CO.

Informed consent was obtained from patients. This study followed the human experimentation guidelines of the US Departments of Health and Human Services and the Albert Einstein College of Medicine in the conduct of clinical research and followed the animal experimentation guidelines of the Albert Einstein College of Medicine in animal studies.

Financial support: National Institutes of Health (NIH; National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke NS39201 and Centers for AIDS Research Grant AI-27741) and by the NIH Intramural AIDS Targeted Antiviral Program. M.P.M. was supported by an NIH training grant (CA09173).

Some of the authors of the manuscript either have patents or patents pending on the Env-targeted toxins described in the paper. E.A.B. is an inventor on US-owned patents related to CD4-PE40 and on US patent application for 3B3(Fv)-PE38. I.P. is an inventor on patents related to PE technology, on US-owned patents related to CD4-PE40, and on US patent application for 3B3(Fv)-PE38. T.B. is an inventor on US patent application for 3B3(Fv)-PE38. We do not feel that their patent position poses a conflict of interest for the findings presented in this paper.

Reprints or correspondence: Dr. Harris Goldstein, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Chanin Bldg., Rm. 601, 1300 Morris Park Ave., Bronx, NY 10461 (hgoldste@aecom.yu.edu).

The Journal of Infectious Diseases 2000;181:921–6

© 2000 by the Infectious Disease Society of America. All rights reserved.  
0092-1899/2000/18103-001\$02.00

erovs, we recently proposed that the specific cytotoxic activity of Env-targeted toxins against HIV-1-infected cells warrants renewed consideration [23]. We suggested various experimental approaches, both in vitro and in vivo, to test the efficacy and safety of these agents when used in conjunction with HAART. Presently there are no published data showing the in vivo efficacy of Env-target toxins, either alone or in combination with other antiretrovirals.

In the present study, we evaluated the capacity of Env-target toxins to enhance HAART efficacy in vivo in a mouse model. We used SCID mice implanted with human fetal thymus and liver tissue under the kidney capsule (thyl/liv-SCID-hu mice). We have previously shown that this model is well suited for evaluating the efficacy of different regimens of HAART in vivo, in both prevention and treatment modes [26]. Two distinct chimeric toxins were tested: CD4-PE40 and 3B3(Fv)-PE38 [27], which is a potent immunotoxin containing the effector portions of PE linked to a single-chain Fv from an affinity-enhanced, broadly cross-reactive antibody against the CD4-binding region of gp120. Our results reveal the ability of Env-targeted toxins to significantly enhance the anti-HIV-1 activity of HAART in experimental protocols examining both the prevention of acute infection and the treatment of chronic infection.

## Materials and Methods

**Env-targeted toxins and control proteins.** CD4-PE40 and sCD4 (first 2 extracellular domains, amino acids 1-183) were donated by Shirley Johnson at Pharmacia-Upjohn, Kalamazoo, MI. The control immunotoxin, RFB4(dsFv)-PE38, is directed at the human B cell antigen CD22 [28] and is not expected to affect HIV-1 infection. We generated sCD4 using mammalian cell expression, and the chimeric toxins were produced using bacterial expression [22, 27].

**Implantation of human thymic and liver tissue into SCID mice.** The thyl/liv-SCID-hu mice were constructed by implanting human fetal thymus and liver tissue obtained from 17-21-gestational-week fetuses within 8 h after the elective termination of pregnancy into SCID mice (6-8 weeks old) as described elsewhere [26]. Briefly, about 10 pieces of syngeneic human fetal thymic and liver tissue were implanted under the left and right kidney capsules of SCID mice anesthetized with pentobarbital (40-80 mg/kg). The procedure was associated with minimal morbidity and mortality and was successful in >95% of the mice, as indicated by a >20-fold increase in size of the implanted tissue 3 months later. We used flow cytometry to confirm the population of human T cells and monocytes in the peripheral blood of these mice; in the mice used for these experiments, the peripheral blood contained >5% human leukocytes. The consent forms and procedures used in this study were reviewed and approved by the Albert Einstein College of Medicine Committee on Clinical Investigation.

**Infection of thyl/liv-SCID-hu mice with HIV.** HIV-1<sub>99</sub>, an R5 (CCR5-specific, nonsyncytium-inducing) primary isolate, was derived from peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) by coculture with phytohemagglutinin (PHA)-activated donor PBMC [29] from a 17-month-old child infected with HIV-1; the virus was expanded by another round of coculture with PHA-activated PBMC

and then divided into aliquots that were frozen in liquid nitrogen [26, 29]. thyl/liv-SCID-hu mice were infected by intraperitoneal (ip) injection of 8000 TCID<sub>50</sub> of the HIV-1<sub>99</sub> in a volume of 500  $\mu$ L. To control for variability due to the source of donor tissue and degree of reconstitution with human cells, we ensured that each treatment group contained mice engrafted with the same donor tissue and with similar quantities of human cells in their peripheral blood.

**Administration of HAART and Env-targeted toxins.** We administered HAART to the mice by mixing the indicated drugs with powdered animal feed and then adding the mixture to feeding jars that were designed to minimize spillage. The drug dosage for each mouse was calculated on the basis of the average oral intake of 5 g of diet per day (each mouse weighed ~25 g). Mice were treated with HAART comprised of zidovudine (100 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> day<sup>-1</sup>), lamivudine (100 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> day<sup>-1</sup>), and zalcitabine (200 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> day<sup>-1</sup>) or suboptimal HAART (10% of the dose for each HAART drug) as described elsewhere [26]. The thyl/liv-SCID-hu mice were housed singly so that drug consumption could be confirmed by measurement of the quantity of feed consumed. The Env-targeted toxins were administered by ip injection of the indicated dose in PBS in 5 doses given on alternate days.

**Titration of HIV-infected mononuclear cells in the hu-thyl/liv-implant by limiting dilution coculture.** The level of HIV-1 infection in the hu-thyl/liv implants was determined by measuring the number of HIV-1-infected thymocytes present in a wedge biopsy of the implant by quantitative coculture, as described elsewhere [26, 29]. Five-fold dilutions of mononuclear cells isolated from the hu-thyl/liv implants (range,  $1 \times 10^4$ - $3.2 \times 10^7$  cells) were cultured in quadruplicate at 37°C in 24-well culture plates with PHA-activated donor mononuclear cells ( $1 \times 10^5$ ) in 2 mL of RPMI 1640 containing fetal calf serum (10% v/v) and interleukin-2 (32 U/mL). The p24 antigen content of the culture supernatant was measured 1-2 weeks later by means of the HIV-1 p24 core profile ELISA assay (Dupont-NEN, Wilmington, DA). The number of HIV-1-infected thymocytes in the implants is reported as TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes, which was calculated by determining the lowest number of added thymocytes that infected at least half of the quadruplicate cultures with HIV-1. Productive infection after the addition of the lowest number of added thymocytes (320 cells) was scored as 3125 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes.

**Statistical analysis.** Statistical significance of the data were evaluated by using the Student's *t* test.

## Results

**Env-targeted toxins enhance capacity of HAART to suppress acute HIV-1 infection.** We have shown previously that, whereas HAART that is initiated immediately after HIV-1 inoculation of thyl/liv-SCID-hu mice prevents establishment of infection, suboptimal HAART (10-fold lower doses of the same drugs) strongly suppresses HIV-1 levels during the treatment period, but does not prevent the subsequent appearance of viral load at 1 month after the cessation of treatment [26]. Here, we examined the in vivo antiretroviral effect of Env-targeted toxins by determining whether they augmented the activity of suboptimal HAART. Thyl/liv-SCID-hu mice were infected by ip in-



oculation of HIV-1<sub>90</sub> [29], then immediately started on the indicated treatment. After 1 month, the effects of the different treatments on HIV-1 infection were determined by quantitating HIV-1-infected thymocytes in a biopsy of the hu-thy/liv implants; this method is much more sensitive than measuring plasma HIV RNA and can quantitate viral load in HAART-treated animals that have no detectable plasma viremia [26]. The mice were then taken off therapy, and 1 month later the hu-thy/liv implants were biopsied again and analyzed.

The effects on suboptimal HAART alone or Env-targeted toxins alone are shown in figure 1. In contrast to untreated mice, in which extensive infection (mean = 2708 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes) was detected in the thy/liv implants at both 1 and 2 months after virus inoculation, mice maintained on suboptimal HAART did not have detectable HIV-1 infection at the end of the 1-month treatment period (mean = 0 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes). However, HIV-1 infection emerged during the 1-month period after cessation of therapy (mean = 258 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes), which is consistent with our previous findings with this suboptimal HAART regimen [26]. The Env-targeted toxins alone suppressed infection only modestly compared with HAART, but the antiretroviral effects were significant (for CD4-PE40, mean = 975 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes,  $P = .028$ ; for 3B3(Fv)-PE38, mean = 292 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes,  $P = .003$ ). In contrast, the mixture of sCD4 plus the control toxin RFB4(dsFv)-PE38 did not significantly suppress HIV infection in the thy/liv implants (mean = 1875 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes,  $P = .15$ ), which indicates that the effects seen with the Env-targeted toxins resulted from selective killing of infected cells.

We next examined whether Env-targeted toxins could enhance the efficacy of suboptimal HAART in suppressing acute HIV-1 infection in the hu-thy/liv-SCID-hu mice. As shown in table 1, the viral loads in the hu-thy/liv implants at 1 month after cessation of therapy remained markedly suppressed in the mice treated with the combination of lower-dose HAART plus either Env-targeted toxin, in contrast to the mice treated with HAART alone, in which the viral load increased significantly. Again, the control proteins sCD4 plus RFB4(dsFv)-PE38 did not augment the anti-HIV-1 activity of HAART, which verified that the activities seen with the Env-targeted toxins reflected specific killing of infected cells, not simple neutralization by the CD4 moiety or nonspecific toxicity by the PE moiety. Thus, by virtue of their specific cytotoxic activities, the Env-targeted toxins administered immediately after HIV-1 inoculation greatly enhanced the capacity of suboptimal HAART to suppress acute infection.

*Env-targeted toxins enhance the capacity of HAART to treat established HIV-1 infection.* We have shown previously that HAART significantly decreases the level of infection in the hu-thy/liv implants of thy/liv SCID-hu mice with established HIV-1 infection, but does not eradicate it, as evidenced by the moderate numbers of residual HIV-1-infected cells that remain in the thymic implants [26]. Therefore, we also used the thy/liv-

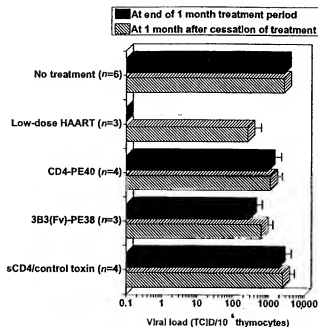


Figure 1. Effects of suboptimal highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) envelope-targeted toxins on acute HIV-1 infection in vivo. thy/liv-SCID-hu mice were injected intraperitoneally with HIV-1<sub>90</sub> (8000 TCID<sub>50</sub>). The mice were then left untreated or were immediately started either on suboptimal HAART, CD4-PE40, 3B3(Fv)-PE38, or a control mixture of sCD4 plus RFB4(dsFv)-PE38 (control toxin); toxins were administered at a total dose of 5  $\mu$ g given in 5 equal doses on alternate days beginning at day one. One month later, the left thy/liv implants were biopsied, and viral loads were analyzed by quantitative coculture (dark bars). Drug therapy was then stopped, and after 1 month the left thy/liv implant of each mouse was rebiopsied and the viral load quantitated (light bars). The data are presented as the TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes, determined by limiting dilution coculture; the mean values ( $\pm$  SEM) were calculated for each treated group.

SCID-hu mouse system to examine the ability of Env-targeted toxins to augment HAART for treating established *in vivo* HIV-1 infection. One month after ip inoculation with HIV-1<sub>90</sub>, the baseline level of HIV-1 infection was determined by quantitative coculture of biopsies from the hu-thy/liv implants; the values were 3125 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes for each of the infected mice. The mice were then treated with HAART alone, HAART plus CD4-PE40, or HAART plus 3B3(Fv)-PE38. After 1 month of treatment, the effects of these therapeutic regimens on HIV infection in the treated mice were determined by quantitative coculture of repeat biopsies of the hu-thy/liv implants. In the untreated mice, the levels of infection in the implants did not decrease, remaining at 3125 TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes. By contrast, as shown in table 2, the viral loads in the thy/liv implant decreased significantly in the mice treated with HAART alone ( $P < .001$ ), HAART plus CD4-PE40 ( $P < .001$ ), or HAART plus 3B3(Fv)-PE38 ( $P < .001$ ). With HAART plus 3B3(Fv)-PE38,

**Table 1.** Measurements of viral load in thy/liv-SCID-hu mice infected with acute human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), showing that HIV envelope-targeted toxins enhance the ability of suboptimal highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) to suppress acute HIV in vivo.

Treatment (dose), mouse no.	Viral load, TCID <sub>50</sub> /10 <sup>6</sup> thymocytes	
	At end of 1-mo treatment period	1 mo after end of treatment
None		
261-a3	3125	3125
261-a4	625	625
261-b2	3125	3125
253-b5	3125	3125
259-a2	3125	3125
250-a3	3125	3125
Mean $\pm$ SEM	2708 $\pm$ 416	2708 $\pm$ 416
Suboptimal HAART		
250-b2	0	25
250-b3	0	125
253-b4	0	625
Mean $\pm$ SEM	0	258 $\pm$ 185
Suboptimal HAART plus:		
CD4-PE40 (50 ng)		
252-a4	0	0
252-a3	0	0
252-b	0	0
Mean	0	0
CD4-PE40 (5 $\mu$ g)		
261-a1	0	0
261-a5	1	5
265-a3	0	1
Mean $\pm$ SEM	0.3 $\pm$ 0.2	2 $\pm$ 1.5
3B3(Fv)-PE38 (50 ng)		
253-a3	0	0
253-a4	0	0
250-a5	0	0
Mean $\pm$ SEM	0	0
3B3(Fv)-PE38 (5 $\mu$ g)		
261-c2	0	1
265-a4	0	1
Mean $\pm$ SEM	0	1 $\pm$ 0
sCD4 + control toxin (5 $\mu$ g) <sup>a</sup>		
258-2	0	125
265-b5	0	125
265-d5	0	625
258-3	0	125
Mean $\pm$ SEM	0	250 $\pm$ 125

NOTE. The mice were injected intraperitoneally with HIV-1<sub>89</sub> (8000 TCID<sub>50</sub>) and either not treated or immediately started on treatment. Dose amounts are the total amount of drug administered in 5 equal doses on alternate days beginning at day 1.

<sup>a</sup> RFB4(dsFv)-PE38 (5  $\mu$ g), a negative control toxin not expected to affect HIV infection. The data are presented as the TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes, determined by limiting dilution coculture.

the viral load was significantly lower ( $P = .04$ ) than with HAART alone (mean,  $10.3 \pm 5.7$  vs.  $91.7 \pm 26$  TCID<sub>50</sub>/10<sup>6</sup> thymocytes). This demonstrates that 3B3(Fv)-PE38 can augment the antiretroviral activity of HAART for the treatment of established in vivo HIV-1 infection. The viral loads in mice treated with HAART plus CD4-PE40 were also lower than those treated with HAART alone (mean,  $51.7 \pm 28.7$  vs.  $91.7 \pm 26$ ), but the difference was not statistically significant ( $P = .23$ ). The increased in vivo activity of 3B3(Fv)-PE38 is consistent with

the results of previous in vitro studies, which indicates that 3B3(Fv)-PE38 has a somewhat greater potency than CD4-PE40 [27].

## Discussion

The findings of this study are the first demonstration that Env-targeted toxins have anti-HIV-1 activity in vivo. They also validate the utility of our thy/liv SCID/hu mouse system for evaluating the in vivo efficacy of different anti-HIV multidrug regimens. In particular, the emergence of HIV infection after the cessation of HAART in these mice provides an in vivo system that can be used to examine the additive anti-HIV-1 effects of various agents used in conjunction with HAART. The activities of the toxins were observed in models for both acute and established infection. However, although the toxins had prominent activity when used in conjunction with HAART, they were minimally effective when used alone. These results are consistent with 2 of our earlier findings in vitro [23, 30]: (1) CD4-PE40 only partially blocks spreading HIV infection, and (2) CD4-PE40 displays potent synergistic activity with a reverse transcriptase inhibitor; combination treatment completely eliminates infectious HIV-1 from cell cultures, an effect that was not achievable with either agent alone. The modest in vitro and in vivo effects observed with the Env-targeted toxins alone can be simply explained by their known mechanism of action; these agents can exert their anti-HIV activities only after Env has been expressed on the surface of the infected cell. Thus, complete suppression of virus spread would be expected only if the cells are killed before any progeny virions are released. Given the complex kinetic parameters governing the rates of cell killing versus virion release, it is not surprising that the toxins alone fail to completely eliminate the infected cell population before some viral spread occurs. Complementary effects might be anticipated when the toxins are combined with inhibitors of essential HIV replication enzymes because the latter agents effectively block subsequent rounds of infection by newly released virions but do not attack cells that are already infected. In the present in vivo experiments, suboptimal HAART was strongly augmented by CD4-PE40, but not by the control mixture of sCD4 plus an irrelevant PE-based toxin. This finding verifies that the complementary activity of the Env-targeted toxin was indeed due to selective killing of the HIV-infected cells. However, we cannot rule out the possibility that other anti-HIV agents with entirely different modes of action might also show complementary activities with the suboptimal HAART regimen.

The present studies are the beginning of a new effort to assess the clinical potential of complementing HAART with Env-targeted toxins, as proposed elsewhere [23]. The toxins used could be those examined in this report or similar agents developed by other investigators [21]. This modality could possibly be used

**Table 2.** Measurements of viral load in thy/liv-SCID-hu mice infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) showing that HIV envelope (Env)-targeted toxins enhance the ability of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) to suppress established HIV-1 infection *in vivo*.

Treatment, mouse no.	Viral load, TCID <sub>50</sub> /10 <sup>6</sup> thymocytes	
	1 mo after infection, before treatment	After 1 mo of treatment
<b>None</b>		
253-b5	3125	3125
259-a2	3125	3125
250-a3	3125	3125
Mean $\pm$ SEM	3125 $\pm$ 0	3125 $\pm$ 0
<b>High-dose HAART</b>		
255-c4	3125	125
255-c5	3125	125
255-c6	3125	25
Mean $\pm$ SEM	3125 $\pm$ 0	91.7 $\pm$ 26
<b>High-dose HAART plus:</b>		
<b>CD4-PE40</b>		
255-c2	3125	25
255-c1	3125	125
255-b6	3125	5
Mean $\pm$ SEM	3125 $\pm$ 0	51.7 $\pm$ 28.7
<b>3B3(Fv)-PE38</b>		
255-b2	3125	5
255-a4	3125	25
255-a3	3125	1
Mean $\pm$ SEM	3125 $\pm$ 0	10.33 $\pm$ 5.7

NOTE. The mice were injected intraperitoneally with HIV-1<sub>8000</sub> (TCID<sub>50</sub>). Env-target toxin was administered at a total dose of 50 ng, given in 5 doses on alternate days starting 3 weeks after the initiation of HAART.

to prevent the establishment of persistent HIV-1 infection in individuals presenting soon after HIV-1 exposure (e.g., newborns of infected mothers; postexposure prophylaxis). Moreover, Env-targeted toxins may serve to help eliminate reservoirs of infected cells that persist after years of HAART; these reservoirs include latently infected resting CD4<sup>+</sup> memory T cells in the circulation and lymphoid tissue [26], blood and lymphoid cells responsible for the virus replication that persists after HAART [4, 8–16], and perhaps other cell types and tissue compartments that are refractory to HAART [7].

Latently infected cells are a particularly difficult problem. It has been proposed that the latent reservoirs may be flushed out by deliberate treatment with agents that activate latently infected cells [4]. Indeed, supplementing HAART with intermittent IL-2 therapy has been shown to significantly reduce the pool of latently infected resting CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells in blood and lymph nodes [31]. However, the IL-2 treatment had negligible effect on the viral load rebound after cessation of therapy [19]. We propose that in such protocols, the Env-targeted toxins may effectively kill the newly activated cells, because these cells should be induced to express surface Env. However, we note that the toxins will be beneficial only if they accelerate the natural mechanisms governing the decline of persistent virus-producing cells (i.e., intrinsic cellular decay rates, viral cytopathic effects, and immune effector mechanisms such as cytotoxic T cells).

Another critical issue for using Env-targeted toxins in conjunction with HAART is the dose-limiting hepatotoxicity observed with CD4-PE40 in earlier phase I trials. This problem is perplexing for several reasons. First, dose-limiting hepatotoxicity was observed in HIV-1-infected people (maximum tolerated dose [MTD] 10  $\mu$ g/kg, [24, 25]) but was not seen in preclinical toxicology studies with uninfected rodents and non-human primates (MTD 250  $\mu$ g/kg, unpublished results). Second, in recent phase I trials for tumor therapy, different PE-based immunotoxins have been well tolerated, and significant antitumor activity was observed at tolerable doses (20–40  $\mu$ g/kg) without serious hepatotoxicity ([32]; R. Kreitman, L. Pischke, and I. Pastan, unpublished results). Thus, the dose-limiting hepatotoxicity previously observed with CD4-PE40 appears to be unique to the use of this chimeric toxin in HIV-1-infected individuals. We have suggested [23] that this problem may have resulted from the high viral loads in subjects treated in the pre-HAART era. Specifically, we proposed that soluble gp120 shed from virions or infected cells would bind to circulating CD4-PE40; the resulting complexes would be delivered to the liver by several mechanisms. If this notion is valid, then hepatotoxicity should not pose a problem under conditions of HAART-mediated virus suppression. Alternatively, if the hepatotoxicity is a unique feature of CD4-PE40 in humans, then immunotoxins such as 3b3(Fv)-PE38 should not be problematic, particularly in view of the absence of severe hepatotoxicity with other PE-based antitumor immunotoxins in phase I trials, as noted earlier. The *in vivo* results presented here provide an impetus for diverse lines of experimentation, both *in vitro* and animal models, to evaluate these critical issues. Such efforts may help pave the way for effective clinical efforts to eradicate HIV-1 infection from the body.

## References

- Saag MS, Schooley RT. Antiretroviral chemotherapy. *Curr Clin Top Infect Dis* 1998;18:154–79.
- Wong JK, Hezareh M, Gunthard HF, et al. Recovery of replication competent HIV despite prolonged suppression of plasma viremia. *Science* 1997;278:1291–5.
- Finzi D, Hermankova M, Pierson T, et al. Identification of a reservoir for HIV-1 in patients on highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Science* 1997;278:1295–300.
- Chun TW, Stuyver L, Mizell SB, et al. Presence of an inducible HIV-1 latent reservoir during highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997;94:13193–7.
- Chun TW, Engel D, Berrey MM, Shea T, Corey L, Fauci AS. Early establishment of a pool of latently infected, resting CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells during primary HIV-1 infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998;95:8869–73.
- Finzi D, Blankson J, Siliciano JD, et al. Latent infection of CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells provides a mechanism for lifelong persistence of HIV-1, even in patients on effective combination therapy. *Nat Med* 1999;5:512–7.
- Zhang H, Dornadula G, Beaumont M, et al. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in the semen of men receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy. *N Engl J Med* 1998;339:1803–9.
- Cavert W, Notermans DW, Staskus K, et al. Kinetics of response in lymphoid

- tissues to antiretroviral therapy of HIV1 infection. *Science* 1997;276:960-4.
9. Natarajan V, Bosche M, Metcalf JA, Ward DJ, Lane HC, Kovacs JA. HIV1 replication in patients with undetectable plasma virus receiving HAART. *Lancet* 1999;353:119-20.
  10. Martinez MA, Cabana M, Ibanez A, Clotet B, Arno A, Ruiz L. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 genetic evolution in patients with prolonged suppression of plasma viremia. *Virology* 1999;256:180-7.
  11. Zhang L, Ramratnam B, Tenner-Racz K, et al. Quantifying residual HIV1 replication in patients receiving combination antiretroviral therapy. *N Engl J Med* 1999;340:1605-13.
  12. Furtado MR, Callaway DS, Phair JP, et al. Persistence of HIV1 transcription in peripheral blood mononuclear cells in patients receiving potent antiretroviral therapy. *N Engl J Med* 1999;340:1614-22.
  13. Hockett RD, Kilby JM, Derdeyn CA, et al. Constant mean viral copy number per infected cell in tissues regardless of high, low, or undetectable plasma HIV RNA. *J Exp Med* 1999;189:1545-54.
  14. Gunthard HF, Frost SDW, Leigh-Brown AJ, et al. Evolution of envelope sequences of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 in cellular reservoirs in the setting of potent antiviral therapy. *J Virol* 1999;73:9404-12.
  15. Dornadula G, Zhang H, VanUitert B, et al. Residual HIV1 RNA in blood plasma of patients taking suppressive highly active antiretroviral therapy. *JAMA* 1999;282:1627-32.
  16. Zhang ZQ, Schuler T, Zupancic M, et al. Sexual transmission and propagation of HIV and HIV in resting and activated CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells. *Science* 1999;286:1353-7.
  17. Montaner JSG, Harris M, Mo T, Harrigan PR. Rebound of plasma HIV viral load following prolonged suppression with combination therapy. *AIDS* 1998;12:1398-9.
  18. Jubault V, Burgard M, Le Corfec E, Costagliola D, Rouzioux C, Viard JP. High rebound of plasma and cellular HIV load after discontinuation of triple combination therapy. *AIDS* 1998;12:2358-9.
  19. Chun TW, Davey RT, Engel D, Lane HC, Fauci AS. Reemergence of HIV after stopping therapy. *Nature* 1999;401:874-5.
  20. Neumann AU, Tubiana R, Calvez V, et al. HIV1 rebound during interruption of highly active antiretroviral therapy has no deleterious effect on reinitiated treatment. *AIDS* 1999;13:677-83.
  21. Pincus SH. Therapeutic potential of antiHIV immunotoxins. *Antiviral Res* 1996;33:1-9.
  22. Chaudhary VK, Mizukami T, Fuerst TR, et al. Selective killing of HIV infected cells by recombinant human CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin hybrid protein. *Nature* 1988;335:369-72.
  23. Berger EA, Moss B, Pastan I. Reconsidering targeted toxins to eliminate HIV infection: you gotta have HAART. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998;95:11511-3.
  24. Ramachandran RV, Katzenstein DA, Wood R, Batts DH, Merigan TC. Failure of short term CD4PE40 infusions to reduce virus load in human immunodeficiency virus infected persons. *J Infect Dis* 1994;170:1009-13.
  25. Davey RT, Boenning CM, Herpin BR, et al. Use of recombinant soluble CD4 Pseudomonas exotoxin, a novel immunotoxin, for treatment of persons infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *J Infect Dis* 1994;170:1180-8.
  26. Pettoello-Mantovani M, Kollmann TR, Katopodis NF, et al. Thy1/SCIDhu mice: a system for investigating the in vivo effects of multidrug therapy on plasma viremia and human immunodeficiency virus replication in lymphoid tissues. *J Infect Dis* 1998;177:337-46.
  27. Bera TK, Kennedy PE, Berger EA, Barbas CF III, Pastan I. Specific killing of HIV infected lymphocytes by a recombinant immunotoxin directed against the HIV1 envelope glycoprotein. *Mol Med* 1998;4:384-91.
  28. Kreitman RJ, Wang QQ, Fitzgerald DJP, Pastan I. Complete regression of human B cell lymphoma xenografts in mice treated with recombinant antiCD22 immunotoxin RFB4(dsFv)P38 at doses tolerated by cynomolgus monkeys. *Int J Cancer* 1999;81:148-55.
  29. Kollmann TR, Kim A, Pettoello-Mantovani M, et al. Divergent effects of chronic HIV1 infection on human thymocyte maturation in SCIDhu mice. *J Immunol* 1995;154:907-921.
  30. Ashorn P, Moss B, Weinstein JN, et al. Elimination of infectious human immunodeficiency virus from human T cell cultures by synergistic action of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin and reverse transcriptase inhibitors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1990;87:8889-93.
  31. Chun TW, Engel D, Mizell SB, et al. Effect of interleukin-2 on the pool of latently infected, resting CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells in HIV1 infected patients receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Nat Med* 1999;5:651-5.
  32. Kreitman RJ, Wilson WH, Robbins D, et al. Responses in refractory hairy cell leukemia to a recombinant immunotoxin. *Blood* 1999;94:3340-8.

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT E**

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of:

PASTAN et al.

Application No.: 09/673,707

Filed: January 11, 2001

For: RECOMBINANT IMMUNOTOXIN  
DIRECTED AGAINST THE HIV-1  
GP120 ENVELOPE GLYCOPROTEIN

Customer No.: 20350

Confirmation No. 3958

Examiner: Zeman, Robert A.

Technology Center/Art Unit: 1645

DECLARATION OF DR. DAVID J.  
FITZGERALD

Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

I, DR. DAVID J. FITZGERALD, hereby declare and state:

1. I received a B.A. in Microbiology from Trinity College, Dublin, Ireland, in 1977, and a Ph.D. in Microbiology from the University of Cincinnati, College of Medicine, Cincinnati, Ohio, in 1982.

2. Since receiving my doctorate in 1982, I have been a researcher in the Laboratory of Molecular Biology ("LMB") of the National Cancer Institute ("NCI"), of the U.S. National Institutes of Health ("NIH"). Since 1994, I have been Chief of the LMB's Biotherapy Section.

3. I am not an inventor on the captioned patent application, have no financial interest in it, and do not expect that any aspect of my employment at NIH will be affected by my submission of this Declaration.

4. I am an author or co-author of over 180 publications in the scientific literature. A copy of my c.v. is attached as Attachment 1.

5. I have been working in the field of targeting toxins to target cells since 1982. As reflected by the publications listed on my c.v., I have extensive experience in targeting toxins to target cells by attaching the toxins to targeting agents including (i) antibodies or fragments thereof (these hybrid molecule are known as "immunotoxins"), (ii) cytokines, and (iii) other molecules, including CD4, that are capable of targeting toxins to desired cell types. I have performed studies on aspects of each of these types of targeted toxins, and followed closely the results of using targeted toxins in clinical trials.

6. I am specifically knowledgeable about the attempts to develop targeted toxins of CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin A ("PE") for use as therapeutic agents for HIV-1 infection, as reflected by the fact that I was a co-author on the first study on the use of a CD4-PE chimeric toxin to kill HIV-1 infected cells:

Chaudhary, V.K., Mizukami, T., Fuerst, T.R., **FitzGerald, D.J.**, Moss, B., Pastan, I., and Berger, E.A., "Selective killing of HIV-infected cells by recombinant human CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein." *Nature* 335:369-372 (1988). A copy of the abstract of this publication is attached as Attachment 2 hereto.

7. My work in the pre-clinical development of CD4-PE toxin conjugates as a therapeutic to treat HIV-1 disease is further reflected by my co-authorship on the following publications:

i.) Berger, E.A., Clouse, K.A., Chaudhary, V.K., Chakrabarti, S., **FitzGerald, D.J.**, Pastan, I., and Moss, B., "CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein blocks the spread of human immunodeficiency virus infection *in vitro* and is active against cells expressing the envelope glycoproteins from diverse primate immunodeficiency retroviruses. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:9539-9543 (1989) A copy of the abstract of this publication is attached as Attachment 3 hereto.

ii.) Moss, B., Mizukami, T., Fuerst, T., Berger, E., Chaudhary, V., **FitzGerald, D.**, and Pastan, I., Localization of the HIV-binding region of CD4 and selective killing of HIV-infected cells with a hybrid CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin. In: Girard, M. and

Valette, L. (Eds.). Colloque des Cent Gardes: Retroviruses of Human AIDS and Related Animal Diseases. France, Pasteur Vaccins, Marnes-La-Coquette, 1989, pp. 60-65.

iii.) Berger, E.A., Chaudhary, V.K., Clouse, K.A., **FitzGerald, D.J.**, Pastan, I., and Moss, B.: "Recombinant CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein: Specific cytotoxic activity against T-cell lines infected with human immunodeficiency virus. In Groopman, J.E., Chen, I., Essex, M., and Weiss, R. (Eds.): Human Retroviruses, UCLA Symposia on Molecular and Cellular Biology, New Series, Vol 119. New York, Alan R. Liss, Inc., 1989, pp. 261-270.

iv.) Ashorn, P., Moss, B., Weinstein, J.N., Chaudhary, V.K., **FitzGerald, D.J.**, Pastan, I., and Berger, E.A., "Elimination of infectious HIV from human T-cell cultures by synergistic action of CD4-*pseudomonas* exotoxin and reverse transcriptase inhibitors." Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 87: 8889-8893 (1990) A copy of the abstract of this publication is attached as Attachment 4 hereto.

v.) Berger, E.A., Chaudhary, V.K., Clouse, K.A., Taraquemada, D., Nicholas, J.A., Rubino, K.L., **FitzGerald, D.J.**, Pastan, I., and Moss, B.: Recombinant CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein displays HIV-specific cytotoxicity without affecting MHC class II-dependent functions. AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses 6: 795-804, 1990. A copy of the abstract of this publication is attached as Attachment 5 hereto.

vi.) Chaudhary, V.K., Moss, B., Berger, E.A., **FitzGerald, D.J.**, and Pastan, I.: CD4-PE40: A chimeric toxin active against HIV-infected cells. In Gallo, R.C. and Jay, G. (Eds.): The Human Retroviruses. Orlando, FL, Academic Press, 1991, pp. 379-387.

8. I followed closely the clinical trials of CD4-PE chimeric toxins. I am familiar with the results of those trials and with what persons of skill in the art believed following the failure of these chimeric toxins in those trials.



9. I am also familiar with the anti-gp120 antibody known as 3B3, as described in the specification of the captioned application. I am aware of the binding specificity and affinity of the Fv portion of this antibody and of the results of using immunotoxins composed of fusing the Fv portion of 3B3 (hereafter referred to as "3B3 Fv") to PE to kill cells infected with HIV-1.

10. I understand that the claims currently under examination in the captioned application are directed to immunotoxins having the binding specificity of 3B3 Fv and the binding affinity of 3B3 Fv, kits containing such immunotoxins, and compositions of these antibodies and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

11. I understand that the Office Action dated April 13, 2006 (hereafter, "the Action"), regarding this application rejects the claims under examination as obvious over Matsushita et al., Aids Research Human Retroviruses 6(2):193-203 (1990) (hereafter, "Matsushita"), in view of Barbas, PNAS 91:3809-3813 (1994) and Pastan, U.S. Patent No. 5,458,878. I understand that the Matsushita reference relates to an anti-gp120 antibody known as 0.5 $\beta$ .

12. I understand that the counsel for the applicants has argued that the high hopes that might have been existed for the use of anti-gp120 antibodies at that time Matsushita was published in 1990 were dashed by the results of clinical trials of CD4-PE40 reported by Ramchandran et al., J. Infect Dis 170:1009-13 (1994) ("Ramchandran") and by Davey et al., J. Infect Dis 170:1180-8 (1994) ("Davey").

13. I understand that, on page 6, the Action states that the immunotoxin used in Ramchandran and Davey are not analogous to the immunotoxins claimed in the claims under examination. I understand that the Action explains this conclusion as follows:

"The immunotoxins of the instant invention . . . target cells expressing gp120 on their surface (i.e., infected cells) whereas the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin of Ramchandran et al. target any cell expressing CD4. Hence any 'results' based on the application of CD4-PE40 immunotoxin would not have any bearing on the perceived efficacy of immunotoxin based on the combination of the cited references. The same is true for the sCD[4]-PE immunotoxin disclosed by Davey et al."

(Technically, toxins targeted by non-antibody targeting molecules such as CD4 are not referred to in the art as "immunotoxins." Since the Action refers to the CD4-targeted toxins of Ramachandran and Davey as "immunotoxins," I will refer to them as such in this Declaration.)

14. The Action's position is factually untrue and would have been known to be false by a person of skill in the art as of the June 1998 filing date of the priority application. CD4 is a cell surface marker on the surface of certain cell types, B cells and macrophages that is bound by the gp120 protein of HIV-1. CD4 does not bind to itself. Neither the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin of Ramachandran nor the sCD4-PE immunotoxin of Davey would bind cells expressing CD4, as stated by the Action.

15. What the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin of Ramachandran and the sCD4-PE immunotoxin of Davey were intended to bind were cells infected by HIV-1, which express gp120 on their surface. The immunotoxins recited in the claims under examination have the binding affinity of the 3B3 Fv, which binds to the gp120 protein. Thus, both (i) the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin of Ramachandran and the sCD4-PE immunotoxin of Davey, and (ii) the immunotoxins of the present invention, bind to cells expressing gp120, not to cells expressing CD4. I and others in the art would therefore consider them to be analogous in terms of the cells they were intended to bind.

16. CD4 has interactions with major histocompatibility ("MHC") class 2 molecules. There was some intellectual concern at the time that CD4-PE toxins would bind to macrophages and other cells that express MHC class 2 molecules. This concern was tested pre-clinically, and found not to be a concern well before the studies reported by Ramachandran and Davey. See, e.g., the Berger et al. (1990) publication listed above at ¶ 7, item (v).

17. I understand that, on page 6, the Action states:

"With regard to Point 4, contrary to Applicants assertion, CD4-P[E]40 immunotoxins would bind not only to cells expressing gp120, but also to any cell expressing CD4 on its surface."

This statement is factually untrue and would have been known to be false by a person of skill in the art as of the June 1998 filing date of the priority application. As already noted above, CD4 does not bind to itself. CD4-PE toxins do not bind "to any cell expressing CD4 on its surface." They do bind (and kill) cells expressing gp120 on their surface, as reported in my publications listed in paragraphs 6 and 7, above. And the only cells in the body that express gp120 are those infected with HIV-1.

17. I understand that, on page 6, the Action further states:

"With regard to Point 5, since the CD4-PE40 immunotoxin would bind to any cell expressing CD4 on its surface, the hepatotoxicity would logically be the result of said immunotoxin binding to healthy cells thereby disrupting some cellular or endocrine cascade present in man but not in the mouse."

This statement is factually untrue and would have been known to be false by a person of skill in the art as of the June 1998 filing date of the priority application. First, as already noted above, CD4 does not bind to itself. CD4-PE toxins do not bind "to any cell expressing CD4 on its surface." Second, cells in the liver (hepatocytes) do not express CD4. Thus, even if the Action was not incorrect about CD4-PE binding to CD4, the Action's argument would fail to explain the hepatotoxicity observed in the human trials of CD4-PE toxins.

18. The above statements set forth my correction of the serious factual errors set forth in the Action. Not surprisingly, since the facts on which the Action are based are wrong, it also incorrectly presents what I and others of skill in the field understood following the results of the clinical trials of CD4-PE immunotoxins and before the filing of the captioned application.

19. At page 7, the Action states that the:

"failure of a non-analogous immunotoxin [the CD4-PE immunotoxins] while it may have been discouraging would not necessarily remove the motivation provided by Matsushita, especially when his immunotoxin (which is analogous to the instant invention) was disclosed to have efficacy."

I consider this analysis to be incorrect, for several reasons.

(i) First, the CD4-targeted toxins, the 0.5 $\beta$  antibody of Matsushita, and the immunotoxins of the claims under examination all target cells expressing gp120, that is, HIV-1 infected cells. Matsushita's antibody is type-specific (see point (iv) below) and therefore binds only to cells infected by HIV-1 of the correct type, while both CD4 and the immunotoxins of the present invention would both bind to cells with less regard to the particular type of HIV-1 infecting the cells. But, to the extent that they are considered as binding to HIV-1 infected cells in preference to cells that are not infected by HIV-1, they would be considered analogous by persons of skill in the art.

(ii) Second, as noted above, liver cells do not express CD4. Thus, as noted above, even assuming that, contrary to fact, the CD4-PE immunotoxins would bind to cells expressing CD4, there would be no reason to think that the hepatotoxicity observed in trials of CD4-PE immunotoxins would not also be found with respect to toxins targeted by the antibody of Matsushita.

(iii) Third, the Action comments that the antibody of Matsushita "was disclosed to have efficacy." The efficacy Matsushita discloses is that "toxin-conjugated anti-gp120 monoclonal antibody selectively killed HIV-infected cells in vitro." Matsushita, at page 199, second paragraph. Thus, the efficacy disclosed in Matsushita is similar to that disclosed in my publication in Nature two years earlier regarding the in vitro efficacy of CD4-PE in killing HIV-1 infected cells. See, Chaudhary et al., Nature 355:369-72 (1988). This would not by itself give persons of skill any reason to expect a different result with the 0.5 $\beta$  antibody of Matsushita than that found in clinical trials of CD4-PE toxins.

(iv) Fourth, Matsushita states that the 0.5 $\beta$  antibody is "type-specific." Matsushita, page 194, first line under heading "Antibody and immunotoxins." Matsushita notes in its discussion section that, while the binding activity of the 0.5 $\beta$  antibody was type specific, toxins conjugated to CD4 "also killed HIV-infected cells in vitro and were shown to be effective against [a] variety of divergent strains of HIV." Id., at page 200, second paragraph. Thus, Matsushita itself indicated the superiority of CD4 as a targeting agent against HIV-1 infected cells to the antibody the Matsushita authors themselves had developed. Any motivation Matsushita provided to create anti-env immunotoxins was removed by the failure of the CD4 toxins that the Matsushita authors themselves indicated were more broadly applicable than those the immunotoxin they had developed.

(v) Finally, both the immunotoxin of Matsushita and CD4-PE are toxins targeted to the envelope glycoprotein ("Env") of HIV-1.

For all of these reasons, even assuming that Matsushita provided a motivation to make Env-targeted toxins prior to the CD4-PE trials, I disagree with the Action's conclusion that Matsushita continued to provide such a motivation following the failure of those trials.

20. I note that the Action also states:

With regard to Point 7, the "long felt need" for AIDS treatments was met by the teachings of Matsushita and would provide additional motivation for the skilled artisan to further refine the teachings of Matsushita.

Action, at page 7. I believe this statement is without merit. With respect, Matsushita's teachings did not "meet" the "long felt need" for AIDS treatments. Matsushita's 0.5 $\beta$  antibody-based immunotoxin is not only type-specific, but is also targeted to an epitope that even Matsushita admits is "within a highly variable region of gp120." Matsushita, at page 194, first full paragraph. Indeed, the Matsushita antibody proved unsuitable for clinical development since the site it binds is one the HIV-1 virus readily mutates so that infected cells do not express the epitope bound by the antibody. I am not aware, some 16 years after the publication of Matsushita in 1990, that the Matsushita 0.5 $\beta$  antibody was ever brought into pre-clinical development. It clearly did not "meet the long-felt need" for an AIDS treatment, as asserted by the Action. In contrast, 3B3Fv-targeted immunotoxins of the claims are continuing to be successful in pre-clinical studies, including one designed to see if the immunotoxin would induce the same hepatotoxicity as that seen in the CD4-PE trials referenced above. See, Kennedy et al., J Leukoc Biol (August 2006). A copy of the abstract of this publication is attached as Attachment 6 hereto.

I further declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these

statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under § 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

Oct 13<sup>th</sup>, 2006

Date

David J. Fitzgerald

Dr. David J. FitzGerald

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT E1**





## CURRICULUM VITAE

<b>Name</b>	David J. FitzGerald
<b>Current Position</b>	Chief, Biotherapy Section Laboratory of Molecular Biology Division of Basic Science National Cancer Institute, NIH
<b>Address and Phone</b>	37 Convent Dr, Bldg 37, 5124 Bethesda, MD 20892-4255  301-496-9457 ph 301-402-1969 fax djpf@helix.nih.gov
<b>Education</b>	
	Trinity College, Dublin, Ireland BA Mod 1977 Microbiology U of Cincinnati, Col of Med, OHPhD 1982 Microbiology
<b>Employment</b>	
1982 - 1984	Staff Fellow, LMB, DCBDC, NCI, NIH
1985 - 1987	Senior Staff Fellow, LMB, DCBDC, NCI, NIH
1987 - 1994	Microbiologist, LMB, DCBDC, NCI, NIH
1994-present	Chief, Biotherapy Section, LMB, DBS, NCI, NIH
<b>Honors</b>	
January 1980	Awarded the Albert J. Ryan Fellowship.
June 1991	NIH Director's Award
June 1992	Pierce Immunotoxin Award, at The Third International Immunotoxin Meeting, Orlando, FL.
July 1994	Chair, Gordon Conference, <i>Drug Carriers in Medicine &amp; Biology</i> .
September 1995	NIH Award of Merit
February 1999	Awarded NCI Intramural Research Award (IRA)
September 2004	NIH Merit Award
July 2002	NIAID Biodefense Grant Award
<b>Teaching Experience</b>	
	Was invited to teach a two-week (September - October, 1988) course on immunotoxins at the Shanghai Institute of Biochemistry (joint U.S. National Academy of Science and Chinese Academy of Science program).

<b>Editorial Boards</b>	<p><i>Infection and Immunity</i> (1987-1989)  <i>Journal of National Cancer Institute</i> (1990-1994)  <i>Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences</i>  <i>Journal of Bioconjugate Chemistry</i> (1990-1994)  <i>Journal of Drug Targeting</i>  <i>Therapeutic Immunity</i>  <i>Journal of Biological Chemistry</i> (1996- )</p>
<b>Peer Review Experience</b>	<p>Member of Study Section for Tropical Medicine and Parasitology, October 1986  Member of special study section to review toxin-based grant proposals, July 1988  American Cancer Society, Ad Hoc Reviewer for Immunotherapy Study Section, Spring 1991</p>
<b>Clinical Investigation</b>	<p>Co-investigator on FDA-approved protocol with PE-ANTI-TAC to treat patients with adult-T-cell leukemia, IND #BB IND 2174 (NSC 600665).</p> <p>Co-investigator on FDA-approved protocol with OVB3-PE to treat patients with ovarian cancer, IND #IND2688 (NSC 615048).</p> <p>Co-investigator on FDA-approved protocol with LMB-1 to treat patients with adenocarcinomas IND #5017 (NSC 651311).</p> <p>Co-investigator on Phase I application for IND of immunotoxin directed to CD22+ leukemias and lymphomas (IND/NSC numbers not yet available).</p>
<b>Committee Experience</b>	<p>An original member and presently serving on NCI's "Technology Review Group". Responsible for reviewing all new invention reports and making strategic decisions about how to prosecute NCI's existing patent portfolio.</p>
<b>Societies</b>	<p>AAAS  American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology</p>
<b>Patents</b>	<p>Pastan, I., Willingham, M.C., and FitzGerald, D.J.:  <i>Pseudomonas</i> exotoxin conjugate immunotoxins. (Assignee: U.S.A., D.H.H.S.) (Filed January 26, 1984.) Granted U.S. Patent #4,545,985, October 8, 1985.</p> <p>Pastan, I., FitzGerald, D.J.P., and Willingham, M.C.:  Monoclonal antibody against ovarian cancer cells (OVB3). Patent #4,806,494, February 21, 1989.</p>

Pastan, I., Adhya, S., and FitzGerald, D.J.P.: Recombinant *Pseudomonas* exotoxin: Construction of an active immunotoxin with low side effects. Patent #4,892,827, January 9, 1990.

Bjorn, M.J., FitzGerald, D.J., Frankel, A.E., Laird, W.J., Pastan, I.H., Ring, D.B., Willingham, M. C., and Windelhake, J. L.: Anti-human ovarian cancer immunotoxins and methods of use thereof. (Assignee: Cetus Corporation) (Filed July 6, 1987.) Granted U.S. Patent #4,958,009, September 18, 1990.

Pastan, I., FitzGerald, D., and Ogata, M.: Selectively cytotoxic IL-4-PE40 fusion protein. (Assignee: U.S.A., D.H.H.S.) (Filed May 12, 1989.) Granted U.S. Patent #5,082,927, January 21, 1992.

Berger, E.A., Fuerst, T.R., Pastan, I., FitzGerald, D., Mizukami, T., and Chaudhary, V.K.: CD-4/cytotoxic gene fusions. Patent #5,206,353, (Assignee: U.S.A., D.H.H.S.) (Filed July 22, 1988.) Granted U.S. Patent #5,206,353, April 27, 1993.

Pastan, I.H., Trevor, P., FitzGerald, D.J., Debinski, W., and Siegall, C.: Recombinant chimeric proteins deliverable across cellular membranes into cytosol of target cells. (Assignee: U.S.A., D.H.H.S.) (Filed March 4, 1991.) Granted U.S. Patent #5,328,984, July 12, 1994.

Berger, E.A., Moss, B., Fuerst, T.R., Pastan, I., FitzGerald, D., Mizukami, T., and Chaudhary, V.K.: Cytotoxic agent against specific virus infection. (Assignee: U.S.A.) (Filed February 25, 1993.) Granted U.S. Patent #5,428,143, June 27, 1995.

Pastan, I., Chaudhary, V.K., and FitzGerald, D.: P. exotoxin fusion proteins have COOH-terminal alterations which increase cytotoxicity. (Assignee: U.S.A., D.H.H.S.) (Filed May 14, 1990.) Granted U.S. Patent #5,458,878, October 17, 1995.

Pastan, I., FitzGerald, D., and Chaudhary, V.K.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxins (PE) and conjugates thereof having lower animal toxicity with high cytotoxic activity through substitution of positively charged amino acids. (Assignee: U.S.A., D.H.H.S.) (Filed October 1, 1993.) Granted U.S. Patent #5,512,658, April 30, 1996.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. FitzGerald, D.J.P., Morris, R.E., and Saelinger, C.B.: Receptor-mediated internalization of *Pseudomonas* toxin by mouse fibroblasts. *Cell* 21: 867-873, 1980.
2. FitzGerald, D.J.P., Morris, R.E., and Saelinger, C.B.: The essential role of calcium in cellular internalization of *Pseudomonas* toxin. *Infect. Immun.* 35: 715-720, 1982.
3. FitzGerald, D.J.P., Padmanabhan, R., Pastan, I., and Willingham, M.C.: Adenovirus-induced release of epidermal growth factor and *Pseudomonas* toxin into the cytosol of KB cells during receptor-mediated endocytosis. *Cell* 32: 607-617, 1983.
4. FitzGerald, D.J.P., Trowbridge, I.S., Pastan, I., and Willingham, M.C.: Enhancement of toxicity of antitransferrin receptor antibody *Pseudomonas* exotoxin conjugates by adenovirus. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 80: 4134-4138, 1983.
5. Willingham, M.C., Haigler, H.T., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Gallo, M.G., Rutherford, A.V., and Pastan, I.: The morphologic pathway of binding and internalization of epidermal growth factor in cultured cells. *Exp. Cell Res.* 146: 163-175, 1983.
6. Zoon, K.C., Arnheiter, H., Zur Nedden, D., FitzGerald, D.J.P., and Willingham, M.C.: Human interferon alpha enters cells by receptor-mediated endocytosis. *Virology* 130: 195-203, 1983.
7. FitzGerald, D.J.P., Morris, R.E., and Saelinger, C.B.: Inhibition of *Pseudomonas* toxin internalization by methylamine. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* 5: Suppl. S985-991, 1983.
8. FitzGerald, D.J.P., Waldmann, T.A., Pastan, I., and Willingham, M.C.: PE-anti-Tac: a cell-specific immunotoxin active against cells expressing the human T-cell growth factor receptor. *J. Clin. Invest.* 74: 966-971, 1984.
9. Seth, P., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Role of a low pH environment in adenovirus enhancement of the toxicity of a *Pseudomonas* exotoxin epidermal growth factor conjugate. *J. Virol.* 51: 650-655, 1984.
10. Akiyama, S., Gottesman, M.M., Hanover, J.A., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Verapamil enhances the toxicity of an epidermal growth factor *Pseudomonas* exotoxin conjugate. *J. Cell Physiol.* 120: 271-279, 1984.
11. Seth, P., FitzGerald, D., Ginsberg, H., Willingham, M., and Pastan, I.: Evidence that the penton base of adenovirus is involved in potentiation of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin conjugated to epidermal growth factor. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 4: 1528-1533, 1984.
12. Akiyama, S., Seth, P., Pirker, R., FitzGerald, D., Gottesman, M.M., and Pastan, I.: Potentiation of cytotoxic activity of immunotoxins on cultured human cells. *Cancer Res.* 45: 1005-1007, 1985.
13. Pirker, R., FitzGerald, D.J., Hamilton, T.C., Ozols, R.F., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Anti-transferrin receptor antibody linked to *Pseudomonas* exotoxin as a model immunotoxin in human ovarian carcinoma cell lines. *Cancer Res.* 45: 751-757, 1985.

14. FitzGerald, D.J.P.: Transport of adenovirus and toxin conjugates into cells via the common pathway of receptor-mediated endocytosis. *Microbiology* 85-90, 1985.
15. Pirker, R., FitzGerald, D.J., Hamilton, T.C., Ozols, R.F., Laird, W., Frankel, A.E., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Characterization of immunotoxins active against ovarian cancer cell lines. *J. Clin. Invest.* 76: 1261-1267, 1985.
16. Zoon, K.C., Arnheiter, H., Zur Nedden, D., FitzGerald, D.J., and Willingham, M.C.: Procedures for measuring receptor-mediated binding and internalization of human interferon. In *Methods of Enzymology* 119: 332-339, 1986.
17. Pastan, I., Seth, P., FitzGerald, D., and Willingham, M.C.: Adenovirus entry into cells: Some new observations on an old problem. In Notkins, A.L. and Oldstone, M.B.A. (Eds.): *Concepts in Viral Pathogenesis*, Vol. II. New York, Springer Verlag, 1986, pp. 141-146.
18. FitzGerald, D.J., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Anti-tumor effects of an immunotoxin made with *Pseudomonas* exotoxin in a nude mouse model of human ovarian cancer. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 83: 6627-6630, 1986.
19. Pastan, I., Willingham, M.C., and FitzGerald, D.J.P.: Immunotoxins. *Cell* 47: 641-648, 1986.
20. Seth, P., FitzGerald, D., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Pathway of adenovirus entry into cells. In Crowell, R. and Lonberg-Holm, K. (Eds.): *Virus Attachment and Entry Into Cells*. Washington, D.C., American Society for Microbiology, 1986, pp. 191-195.
21. Hwang, J., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Adhya, S., and Pastan, I.: Functional domains of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin identified by deletion analysis of the gene expressed in *E. coli*. *Cell* 48: 129-136, 1987.
22. FitzGerald, D.J.P., Bjorn, M.J., Ferris, R.J., Winkelhake, J.L., Frankel, A.E., Hamilton, T.C., Ozols, R.F., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Antitumor activity of an immunotoxin in a nude mouse model of human ovarian cancer. *Cancer Res.* 47: 1407-1410, 1987.
23. Willingham, M.C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin coupled to a monoclonal antibody against ovarian cancer inhibits the growth of human ovarian cancer cells in a mouse model. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84: 2474-2478, 1987.
24. FitzGerald, D.J., Willingham, M.C., Cardarelli, C.O., Hamada, H., Tsuruo, T., Gottesman, M.M., and Pastan, I.: A monoclonal antibody *Pseudomonas* toxin conjugate that specifically kills multidrug-resistant cells. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84: 4288-4292, 1987.
25. Lyall, R.M., Hwang, J., Cardarelli, C., FitzGerald, D., Akiyama, S.-I., Gottesman, M.M., and Pastan, I.: Isolation of human KB cell lines resistant to epidermal growth factor *Pseudomonas* exotoxin conjugates. *Cancer Res.* 47: 2961-2966, 1987.
26. Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., Adhya, S., and Pastan, I.: Activity of a recombinant fusion protein between transforming growth factor type  $\alpha$  and *Pseudomonas* toxin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84: 4538-4542, 1987.

27. Cryz, S.J., Jr., Furer, E., Sadoff, J.C., Germanier, R., Pastan, I., Willingham, M.C., and FitzGerald, D.J.P.: The use of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* toxin A in the construction of conjugate vaccines and immunotoxins. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* 9: S644-749, 1987.
28. Pirker, R., FitzGerald, D., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Immunotoxins and endocytosis. *Lymphokines* 14: 361-382, 1987.
29. FitzGerald, D.J.P.: Construction of immunotoxins using *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A. *Methods Enzymol.* 151: 139-145, 1987.
30. Griffin, T.W., Childs, L.R., FitzGerald, D.J., and Levin, L.V.: Enhancement of the cytotoxic effect of anti-carcinoembryonic antigen immunotoxins by adenovirus and carboxylic ionophores. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 79: 679-685, 1987.
31. Lorberboum-Galski, H., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Chaudhary, V.K., Adhya, S., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic activity of an interleukin 2-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin chimeric protein produced in *E. coli*. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 1922-1926, 1988.
32. Kondo, T., FitzGerald, D., Chaudhary, V.K., Adhya, S., and Pastan, I.: Activity of immunotoxins constructed with modified *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A lacking the cell recognition domain. *J. Biol. Chem.* 263: 9470-9475, 1988.
33. Chaudhary, V.K., Xu, Y.H., FitzGerald, D., Adhya, S., and Pastan, I.: Role of domain II of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin in the secretion of proteins into the periplasm and medium by *Escherichia coli*. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 2939-2943, 1988.
34. FitzGerald, D., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin immunotoxins. In Frankel, A. (Ed.): *Immunotoxins*. Martin Nijhoff B.V., 1988, pp. 161-173.
35. Pirker, R., FitzGerald, D.J., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Enhancement of the activity of immunotoxins made with either ricin A chain or *Pseudomonas* exotoxin in human ovarian and epidermoid carcinoma cell lines. *Cancer Res.* 48: 3919-3923, 1988.
36. Jinno, Y., Chaudhary, V.K., Kondo, T., Adhya, S., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Mutational analysis of domain I of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. Mutations in domain I of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin which reduce cell binding and animal toxicity. *J. Biol. Chem.* 263: 13203-13207, 1988.
37. Chaudhary, V.K., Mizukami, T., Fuerst, T.R., FitzGerald, D.J., Moss, B., Pastan, I., and Berger, E.A.: Selective killing of HIV-infected cells by recombinant human CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein. *Nature* 335: 369-372, 1988.
38. Gallo, M.G., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Cloning and expression of the H chain V region of antibody OVB3 that reacts with human ovarian cancer. *J. Immunol.* 141: 1034-1040, 1988.
39. Bailon, P., Weber, D.V., Gately, M., Smart, J.E., Lorberboum-Galski, H., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Purification and partial characterization of an interleukin 2-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin fusion protein. *Biotechnology* 6: 1326-1329, 1988.

40. Lorberboum-Galski, H., Kozak, R.W., Waldmann, T.A., Bailon, P., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Interleukin 2 (IL2) PE40 is cytotoxic to cells displaying either the p55 or p70 subunit of the IL2 receptor. *J. Biol. Chem.* 263: 18650-18656, 1988.
41. Ogata, M., Lorberboum-Galski, H., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: IL-2-PE40 is cytotoxic for activated T lymphocytes expressing IL-2 receptors. *J. Immunol.* 141: 4224-4228, 1988.
42. Siegall, C.B., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic activity of an interleukin 6-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin fusion protein on human myeloma cells. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 9738-9742, 1988.
43. Lorberboum-Galski, H., Barrett, L.V., Kirkman, R.L., Ogata, M., Willingham, M.C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Cardiac allograft survival in mice treated with IL-2-PE40. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86: 1008-1012, 1989.
44. FitzGerald, D. and Pastan, I.: Toxin conjugates: Interaction with mammalian cells. In Saelinger, C.B. (Ed.): *Trafficking of Bacterial Toxins*. CRC Press, 1989, pp. 149-163.
45. Case, J.P., Lorberboum-Galski, H., Lafyatis, R., FitzGerald, D., Wilder, R.L., and Pastan, I.: Chimeric cytotoxin IL2-PE40 prevents adjuvant arthritis in rats. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86: 287-291, 1989.
46. Pearson, J.W., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Willingham, M.C., Wiltrout, R.H., Pastan, I., and Longo, D.: Chemo-immunotoxin therapy against a human colon tumor (HT-29) xenografted into nude mice. *Cancer Res.* 49: 3562-3567, 1989.
47. Chaudhary, V.K., Queen, C., Junghans, R.P., Waldmann, T.A., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: A recombinant immunotoxin consisting of two antibody variable domains fused to *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Nature* 339: 394-397, 1989.
48. Ogata, M., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic activity of a recombinant fusion protein between interleukin 4 and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86: 4215-4219, 1989.
49. Siegall, C.B., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Functional analysis of domains II, Ib, and III of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *J. Biol. Chem.* 264: 14256-14261, 1989.
50. Pastan, I. and FitzGerald, D.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin: chimeric toxins. *J. Biol. Chem.* 264: 15157-15160, 1989.
51. FitzGerald, D. and Pastan, I.: Targeted toxin-therapy for the treatment of cancer. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 81: 1455-1463, 1989.
52. Pirker, R., FitzGerald, D.J., Raschack, M., Frank, Z., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Enhancement of the activity of immunotoxins by analogues of verapamil. *Cancer Res.* 49: 4791-4795, 1989.
53. Berger, E.A., Clouse, K.A., Chaudhary, V.K., Chakrabarti, S., FitzGerald, D.J., Pastan, I., and Moss, B.: CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein blocks the spread of human immunodeficiency virus infection *in vitro* and is active against cells expressing the

- envelope glycoproteins from diverse primate immunodeficiency retroviruses. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86: 9539-9543, 1989.
54. Roberge, F.G., Lorberboum-Galski, H., Le Hoang, P., de Smet, M., Chan, C.C., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Selective immunosuppression of activated T cells with the chimeric toxin IL-2-PE40. Inhibition of experimental autoimmune uveoretinitis. *J. Immunol.* 143: 3498-3502, 1989.
  55. Jinno, Y., Ogata, M., Chaudhary, V.K., Willingham, M.C., Adhya, S., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Domain II mutants of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin deficient in translocation. *J. Biol. Chem.* 264: 15953-15959, 1989.
  56. Batra, J.K., Jinno, Y., Chaudhary, V.K., Kondo, T., Willingham, M.C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Antitumor activity in mice of an immunotoxin made with anti-transferrin receptor and a recombinant form of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86: 8545-8549, 1989.
  57. Moss, B., Mizukami, T., Fuerst, T., Berger, E., Chaudhary, V., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Localization of the HIV-binding region of CD4 and selective killing of HIV-infected cells with a hybrid CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin. In: Girard, M. and Valette, L. (Eds.). *Colloque des Cent Gardes: Retroviruses of Human AIDS and Related Animal Diseases*. France, Pasteur Vaccins, Marnes-La-Coquette, 1989, pp. 60-65.
  58. Berger, E.A., Chaudhary, V.K., Clouse, K.A., FitzGerald, D.J., Pastan, I., and Moss, B.: Recombinant CD4-*pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein: Specific cytotoxic activity against T-cell lines infected with human immunodeficiency virus. In Groopman, J.E., Chen, I., Essex, M., and Weiss, R. (Eds.): *Human Retroviruses, UCLA Symposia on Molecular and Cellular Biology, New Series*, Vol 119. New York, Alan R. Liss, Inc., 1989, pp. 261-270.
  59. Chaudhary, V.K., Jinno, Y., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin contains a specific sequence at the carboxyl terminus that is required for cytotoxicity and resembles the endoplasmic reticulum retention sequence. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87: 308-312, 1990.
  60. Tomasselli, A.G., Hui, J.O., Sawyer, T.K., Staples, D.J., FitzGerald, D.J., Chaudhary, V.K., Pastan, I., and Heinrikson, R.L.: Interdomain hydrolysis of a truncated *pseudomonas* exotoxin by the human immunodeficiency virus-1 protease. *J. Biol. Chem.* 265: 408-413, 1990.
  61. Chaudhary, V.K., Batra, J.K., Gallo, M., Willingham, M.C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: A rapid method of cloning functional variable region antibody genes in *E. coli* as single chain immunotoxin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87: 1066-1070, 1990.
  62. Idziorek, T., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Low pH-induced changes in *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and its domains: Increased binding of triton X-114. *Infect. Immun.* 58: 1415-1420, 1990.
  63. Siegall, C.B., Nordan, R.P., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Cell-specific toxicity of a chimeric protein composed of interleukin-6 and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin (IL6-PE40) on tumor cells. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 10: 2443-2447, 1990.



64. Berger, E.A., Chaudhary, V.K., Clouse, K.A., Taraquemada, D., Nicholas, J.A., Rubino, K.L., FitzGerald, D.J., Pastan, I., and Moss, B.: Recombinant CD4-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin hybrid protein displays HIV-specific cytotoxicity without affecting MHL class II-dependent functions. *AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses* 6: 795-804, 1990.
65. Kozak, R.W., FitzGerald, D.J., Atcher, R.W., Goldman, C.K., Nelson, D.L., Gansow, O.A., Pastan, I., and Waldmann, T.A.: Selective elimination *in vitro* of alloresponsive T cells to human transplantation antigens by toxin or radionucleotide conjugated anti-IL-2 receptor (Tac) monoclonal antibody. *J. Immunol.* 144: 3417-3423, 1990.
66. Siegall, C.B., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Tumor-specific cytotoxicity of the chimeric toxin TGF $\alpha$ -PE40 and IL6-PE40. In Dinarelli, C.A., Kluger, M., Oppenheim, J., and Powanda, M. (Eds.): *Physiological and Pathological Effects of Cytokines*. New York, Alan R. Liss, Inc., 1990, pp. 401-406.
67. Tomasselli, A.G., Hui, J.O., Sawyer, T.K., Staples, D.J., Bannow, C.A., Chaudhary, V.K., Fryling, C.M., Pastan, I., FitzGerald, D.J., and Heinrikson, R.L.: Proteases from HIV and AMV show distinct specificities in the hydrolysis of multidomain protein substrates. *J. Virol.* 64: 3157-3161, 1990.
68. FitzGerald, D., Idziorek, T., Batra, J.K., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Antitumor activity of thioether linked immunotoxin: OVB3-PE. *Bioconjug. Chem.* 1: 264-268, 1990.
69. Chaudhary, V.K., Jinno, Y., Gallo, M.G., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Mutagenesis of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin in identification of sequences responsible for animal toxicity. *J. Biol. Chem.* 265: 16306-16310, 1990.
70. Batra, J.K., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: TGF $\alpha$ -anti-Tac(Fv)-PE40: A bifunctional toxin cytotoxic for cells with EGF or IL2 receptors. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 171: 1-6, 1990.
71. Lorberboum-Galski, H., Garsia, R.J., Gately, M., Brown, P.S., Clark, R.E., Waldmann, T.A., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J.P., and Pastan, I.: IL2-PE66<sup>600</sup>, a new chimeric protein cytotoxic to human activated T lymphocytes. *J. Biol. Chem.* 265: 16311-16317, 1990.
72. Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxicity of IL6-PE40 and derivatives on tumor cells expressing a range of IL6 receptor levels. *J. Biol. Chem.* 265: 16318-16323, 1990.
73. Ogata, M., Chaudhary, V.K., Pastan, I., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Processing of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin by a cellular protease results in the generation of a 37,000 Da toxin fragment that is translocated to the cytosol. *J. Biol. Chem.* 265: 20678-20685, 1990.
74. Batra, J.K., FitzGerald, D., Gately, M., Chaudhary, V.K., and Pastan, I.: Anti-Tac(Fv)-PE40: A single chain antibody *pseudomonas* fusion protein directed at interleukin 2 receptor bearing cells. *J. Biol. Chem.* 265: 15195-15202, 1990.
75. Ashorn, P., Moss, B., Weinstein, J.N., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., Pastan, I., and Berger, E.A.: Elimination of infectious HIV from human T-cell cultures by synergistic action of CD4-*pseudomonas* exotoxin and reverse transcriptase inhibitors.

*Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87: 8889-8893, 1990.

76. Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Selective killing of tumor cells using EGF or TGF $\alpha$ -*Pseudomonas* exotoxin chimeric molecules. *Sem. Cancer Biol.* 1: 345-350, 1990.
77. Kozak, R.W., Lorberboum-Galski, H., Jones, L., Puri, R.K., Willingham, M.C., Malek, T., FitzGerald, D.J., Waldmann, T., and Pastan, I.: IL2-PE40 prevents the development of tumors in mice injected with IL-2 receptor expressing EL4 transfectant tumor cells. *J. Immunol.* 145: 2766-2771, 1990.
78. Pai, L.H., FitzGerald, D.J., Tepper, M., Schacter, B., Spitalny, G., and Pastan, I.: Inhibition of antibody response to *Pseudomonas* exotoxin (PE) and an immunotoxin containing *Pseudomonas* exotoxin by 15-deoxyspergualin in mice. *Cancer Res.* 50: 7750-7753, 1990.
79. Siegall, C.B., Schwab, G., Nordan, R.P., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Expression of the interleukin 6 receptor and interleukin 6 in prostate carcinoma cells. *Cancer Res.* 50: 7786-7788, 1990.
80. Chaudhary, V.K., Gallo, M.G., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: A recombinant single-chain immunotoxin composed of anti-Tac variable regions and a truncated diphtheria toxin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87: 9491-9494, 1990.
81. Kreitman, R.J., Chaudhary, V.K., Waldmann, T., Willingham, M.C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: The recombinant immunotoxin anti-Tac(Fv)-PE40 is cytotoxic toward peripheral blood malignant cells from patients with adult T-cell leukemia. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 87: 8291-8295, 1990.
82. Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Selective killing of IL6 receptor bearing myeloma cells using recombinant IL6-*Pseudomonas* toxin. In Potter, M. and Melchers, F. (Eds.): *Mechanisms of B-cell Neoplasia*. New York, Springer-Verlag, 1990, pp. 63-69.
83. Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Selective killing of IL6 receptor bearing myeloma cells using recombinant IL6-*Pseudomonas* toxin. *Curr.Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* 166: 63-69, 1990.
84. Heimbrook, D.C., Stirdivant, S.M., Ahern, J.D., Blashin, N.L., Patrick, D.R., Edwards, G.M., Defeo-Jones, D., FitzGerald, D.J., Pastan, I., and Oliff, A.: Transforming growth factor- $\alpha$  - *Pseudomonas* exotoxin fusion protein prolongs survival of nude mice bearing tumor xenografts. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 4697-4701, 1990.
85. Ogata, M., Pastan, I., and FitzGerald, D.: Analysis of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin activation and conformational changes by using monoclonal antibodies as probes. *Infect. Immun.* 59: 407-414, 1991.
86. Prior, T.I., Helman, L.J., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic activity of a recombinant fusion protein between insulin-like growth factor I and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Cancer Res.* 51: 174-180, 1991.
87. Prior, T.I., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Barnase toxin - A new chimeric toxin composed of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin-A and barnase. *Cell* 64: 1017-1023, 1991.

88. FitzGerald, D.J.: How can we target cytotoxins to destroy subclasses of nociceptors. In: Basbaum, A.I. and Besson J.-M. (Eds.): *Towards a New Pharmacotherapy of Pain. Dahlem Konferenzen*. Chicester, England, John Wiley & Sons Ltd., 1991, pp. 69-82.
89. Debinski, W., Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Substitution of foreign protein sequences into a chimeric toxin composed of transforming growth factor alpha and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 3: 1751-1753, 1991.
90. Rose, J.W., Lorberboum-Galski, H., FitzGerald, D., McCarron, R., Hill, K.E., Townsend, J.J., and Pastan, I.: Chimeric cytotoxin IL2-PE40 inhibits relapsing experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. *J. Neuroimmunol.* 32: 209-217, 1991.
91. FitzGerald, D. and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and derived conjugates: Interactions with mammalian cells. In Steer, C.J., and Hanover, J. (Eds.): *Intracellular Trafficking of Proteins*. England, Cambridge University Press, 1991, pp. 226-247.
92. Chaudhary, V.K., Moss, B., Berger, E.A., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: CD4-PE40: A chimeric toxin active against HIV-infected cells. In Gallo, R.C. and Jay, G. (Eds.): *The Human Retroviruses*. Orlando, FL, Academic Press, 1991, pp. 379-387.
93. Batra, J.K., FitzGerald, D.J., Chaudhary, V.K., and Pastan, I.: Single chain immunotoxins directed at the human transferrin receptor containing pseudomonas exotoxin A or diphtheria toxin: Anti-TFR(Fv)-PE40 and DT388-Anti-TFR(Fv). *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 11: 2200-2205, 1991.
94. Pai, L.H., Batra, J.K., FitzGerald, D.J., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Anti-tumor activities of immunotoxins made of monoclonal antibody B3 and different forms of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 3358-3362, 1991.
95. Siegall, C.B., Kreitman, R.J., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Anti-tumor effects of IL6-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin chimeric molecules against the human hepatocellular carcinoma, PLC/PRF/5 in mice. *Cancer Res.* 51: 2831-2836, 1991.
96. Heimbrook, D.C., Stirdivant, S.M., Ahern, J.D., Balishan, N.L., Patrick, D.R., Edwards, G.M., Defeo-Jones, D., FitzGerald, D.J., Pastan, I., and Oliff, A.: Biological activity of a transforming growth factor-alpha-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin fusion protein *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *J. Industrial Microbiol.* 7: 203-208, 1991.
97. Epstein, S.E., Siegall, C.B., Biro, S., Fu, Y.-M., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic effects of a recombinant chimeric toxin on rapidly proliferating vascular smooth muscle cells. *Circ. Res.* 84: 778-787, 1991.
98. Siegall, C.B., Ogata, M., Pastan, I., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Analysis of sequences in domain II of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A which mediate translocation. *Biochemistry* 30: 7154-7159, 1991.
99. Pai, H., Gallo, M.G., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Anti-tumor activity of a transforming growth factor alpha-*Pseudomonas* exotoxin fusion protein (TGF $\alpha$ -PE40). *Cancer Res.* 51: 2808-2812, 1991.
100. Puri, R.K., Ogata, M., Leland, P., Feldman, G.M., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Expression of high affinity IL-4 receptors on murine sarcoma cells and receptor mediated

- cytotoxicity of tumor cells to chimeric protein between IL-4 and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Cancer Res.* 51: 3011-3017, 1991.
101. Lorberboum-Galski, H., Lafyatis, R., Case, J.P., FitzGerald, D., Wilder, R.L., and Pastan, I.: Administration of IL2-PE40 via osmotic pumps prevents adjuvant induced arthritis in rats. Improved therapeutic index of IL2-PE40 administered by continuous infusion. *Int. J. Immunopharmacol.* 13: 305-315, 1991.
  102. Herbort, C.P., de Smet, M.D., Roberge, F.G., Nussenblatt, R.B., FitzGerald, D., Lorberboum-Galski, H., and Pastan, I.: Treatment of corneal allograft rejection with the cytotoxin IL2-PE40. *Transplantation* 52: 470-474, 1991.
  103. Beraud, E., Lorberboum-Galski, H., Chan, C.C., FitzGerald, D., Pastan, I., and Nussenblatt, R.B.: Immunospecific suppression of encephalitogenic activated T lymphocytes by chimeric cytotoxin IL-2-PE40. *Cell. Immunol.* 133: 379-389, 1991.
  104. Seetharam, S., Chaudhary, V., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Increased cytotoxic activity of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and two chimeric toxins ending in KDEL. *Biol. Chem.* 266: 17376-17381, 1991.
  105. FitzGerald, D. and Pastan, I.: Redirecting *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Sem. Cell Biol. (Redirecting Nature's Toxins)* 2: 31-37, 1991.
  106. Brinkmann, U., Pai, L.H., FitzGerald, D.J., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: B3(Fv)-PE38KDEL, a single-chain immunotoxin that causes complete regression of a human carcinoma in mice. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 8616-8620, 1991.
  107. Siegall, C.B., Epstein S., Speir, E., Hla, T., Forough, R., Maciag, T., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic activity of chimeric proteins composed of acidic fibroblast growth factor and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin on a variety of cell types. *FASEB J.* 5: 2843-2849, 1991.
  108. Pastan, I. and FitzGerald, D.J.: Recombinant toxins for cancer treatment. *Science* 254: 1173-1177, 1991.
  109. Pai, L.H., Bookman, M.A., Ozols, R.J., Young, R.C., Smith, J.W. II, Longo, D.L., Gould, B., Frankel, A., McClay, E.F., Howell, S., Reed, E., Willingham, M.C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Clinical evaluation of intraperitoneal *Pseudomonas* exotoxin immunoconjugate OVB3-PE in patients with ovarian cancer. *J. Clin. Oncol.* 9: 2095-2103, 1991.
  110. Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: A proper amino terminus of Diphtheria toxin is required for cytotoxicity. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 180: 545-551, 1991.
  111. Fryling, C., Ogata, M., and FitzGerald, D.: Characterization of a cellular protease that cleaves *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Infect. Immun.* 60: 497-502, 1992.
  112. Fattom, A., Shiloach, J., Bryla, D., FitzGerald, D., Pastan, I., Karakawa, W.W., Robbins, J.B., and Schneerson, R.: Comparative immunogenicity of conjugates composed of the *Staphylococcus aureus* type 8 capsular polysaccharide bound to carrier proteins by adipic acid dihydrazide or N-Succinimidyl-3-(2-Pyridyldithio)propionate. *Infect. Immun.* 60: 584-589, 1992.
  113. Kreitman, R.J., Chaudhary, V.K., Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.:

- Rational design of a chimeric toxin: An intramolecular location for the insertion of transforming growth factor  $\alpha$  within *Pseudomonas* exotoxin as a targeting ligand. *Bioconjug. Chem.* 3: 58-62, 1992.
114. Kreitman, R.J., Siegall, C.B., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Properties of chimeric toxins with two recognition domains: Interleukin 6 and transforming growth factor  $\alpha$  at different locations in *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Bioconjug. Chem.* 3: 63-68, 1992.
  115. Kreitman, R.J., Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D.J., Epstein, J., Barlogie, B., and Pastan, I.: Interleukin 6 fused to a mutant form of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin kills malignant cells from patients with multiple myeloma. *Blood* 79: 1775-1780, 1992.
  116. Prior, T.I., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Translocation mediated by domain II of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A: Transport of barnase into the cytosol. *Biochemistry* 31: 3555-3559, 1992.
  117. Pastan, I., Chaudhary, V.K., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Recombinant toxins as novel therapeutic agents. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 61: 331-354, 1992.
  118. Kreitman, R.J., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Targeting growth factor receptors with fusion toxins. *Int. J. Immunopharmacol.* 14: 465-472, 1992.
  119. FitzGerald, D., Chaudhary, V.K., Kreitman, R.J., Siegall, C.B., and Pastan, I.: Generation of chimeric toxins. In Frankel, A.E. (Ed.): *Genetically Engineered Toxins*. New York, Marcel Dekker, Inc., 1992, pp. 447-462.
  120. Pai, L.H., Batra, J.K., FitzGerald, D.J., Willingham, M.C., and Pastan, I.: Antitumor effect of B3-PE and B3-LysPE40 in a nude mouse model of human breast cancer and the evaluation of B3-PE toxicity in monkeys. *Cancer Res.* 52: 3189-3193, 1992.
  121. Kounnas, M.Z., Morris, R.E., Thompson, M.R., FitzGerald, D.J., Strickland, D.K., and Saelinger, C.B.: The  $\alpha_2$ -macroglobulin receptor/low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein binds and internalizes *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267: 12420-12423, 1992.
  122. Kreitman, R.J., Schneider, W.P., Queen, C., Tsudo, M., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Waldmann, T.A., and Pastan, I.: M1k- $\beta$ (Fv)-PE40, a recombinant immunotoxin cytotoxic toward cells bearing the beta chain of the IL-2 receptor. *J. Immunol.* 149: 2810-2815, 1992.
  123. Theuer, C.P., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: A recombinant form of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin directed at the epidermal growth factor receptor that is cytotoxic without requiring proteolytic processing. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267: 16872-16877, 1992.
  124. Debinski, W., Karlsson, B., Lindholm, L., Siegall, C.B., Willingham, M.C., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Monoclonal antibody C242 - *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A: A specific and potent immunotoxin with antitumor activity on a human colon cancer xenograft in nude mice. *J. Clin. Invest.* 90: 405-411, 1992.
  125. Kasturi, S., Kihara, A., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: Alanine scanning mutagenesis identifies surface amino acids on domain II of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A: A specific and potent immunotoxin with antitumor activity on a human colon cancer xenograft in nude mice. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267: 23427-23433, 1992.

126. Ogata, M., Fryling, C.M., Pastan, I., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Cell-mediated cleavage of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin between Arg279 and Gly280 generates the enzymatically active fragment which translocates to the cytosol. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267: 25396-25401, 1992.
127. FitzGerald, D.J. and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin - recombinant conjugates as therapeutic agents. *Biochem. Soc. Trans.* 20: 731-734, 1992.
128. Puri, R. K., FitzGerald, D., Leland, P., Kozak, R. W., and Pastan, I.: *In vitro* and *in vivo* suppression of interleukin-2-activated killer cell activity by chimeric protein between interleukin-2 and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Cell. Immunol.* 143: 324-334, 1992.
129. Brinkmann, U., Pai, L.H., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Alteration of a protease-sensitive region of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin prolongs its survival in the circulation of mice. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89: 3065-3069, 1992.
130. Kreitman, R.J., Chaudhary, V.K., Kozak, R.W., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Waldmann, T.A., and Pastan, I.: Recombinant toxins containing the variable domains of the anti-Tac monoclonal antibody to the IL2-receptor kill malignant cells from patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Blood* 80: 2344-2352, 1992.
131. Debinski, W., Jinno, Y., Siegall, C.B., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Genetic manipulations in a primary structure of PE40 that enable its selective chemical derivatization. In Epenetos, A.A. (Ed.): *Monoclonal Antibodies: Applications in Clinical Oncology*. Cambridge, England, Chapman & Hall, 1993, pp. 503-511.
132. Fattom, A., Schneerson, R., Watson, D.C., Karakawa, W.W., FitzGerald, D., Pastan, I., Li, X.R., Shiloach, J., Bryla, D.A., and Robbins, J.B.: Laboratory and clinical-evaluation of conjugate vaccines composed of staphylococcus-aureus type-5 and type-8 capsular polysaccharides bound to *Pseudomonas-aeruginosa* recombinant exoprotein-A. *Infect. Immun.* 6: 1023-1032, 1993.
133. Theuer, C.P., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Immunotoxins made with a recombinant form of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A that do not require proteolysis for activity. *Cancer Res.* 53: 340-347, 1993.
134. Kreitman, R.J., Batra, J.K., Seetharam, S., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Single-chain immunotoxin fusions between anti-Tac and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin Relative importance of the two toxin disulfide bonds. *Bioconjug. Chem.* 4: 112-120, 1993.
135. Kreitman, R.J., Hansen, H.J., Jones, A.L., FitzGerald, D.J., Goldenberg, D.M., and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin-based immunotoxins containing the antibody LL2 or LL2-Fab' induce regression of subcutaneous human B cell lymphoma in mice. *Cancer Res.* 53: 819-825, 1993.
136. Kreitman, R.J., Chaudhary, V.K., Waldmann, T.A., Hanchard, B., Cranston, B., FitzGerald, D.J.P., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic activities of recombinant toxins composed of *Pseudomonas* toxin or diphtheria toxin toward lymphocytes from patients with adult T-cell leukemia. *Leukemia* 7: 553-562, 1993.

137. Theuer, C.P., Kreitman, R.J., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: A recombinant form of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A containing transforming growth factor alpha near its carboxyl terminus for the treatment of bladder cancer. *J. Urol.* 149: 1626-1632, 1993.
138. Wang, Q.-C., Pai, L.H., Debinski, W., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Polyethylene glycol-modified chimeric toxin composed of transforming growth factor alpha and *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Cancer Res.* 53: 4588-4594, 1993.
139. Zdanovsky, A.G., Chiron, M., Pastan, I., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Mechanism of action of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin - identification of a rate-limiting step. *J. Biol. Chem.* 268: 21791-21799, 1993.
140. FitzGerald, D. and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and recombinant immunotoxins derived from it. *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 685: 740-745, 1993.
141. Theuer, C. P., Buchner, J., FitzGerald, D., and Pastan, I.: The N-terminal region of the 37-kDa translocated fragment of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A aborts translocation by promoting its own export after microsomal membrane insertion. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90: 7774-7778, 1993.
142. FitzGerald, D. and Pastan, I.: Recombinant toxins directed to cytokine and growth factor receptors. In: Oppenheim, J.J., Rossio, J., and Gearing, A. (Eds.): *Clinical Applications of Cytokines*. Columbia, MD, Bermedica Production, Ltd., 1993, pp. 263-267.
143. Kreitman, R.J., Bailon, P., Chaudhary, V.K., FitzGerald, D.J.P., and Pastan, I.: Recombinant immunotoxin containing anti-Tac(Fv) and derivatives of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin produce complete regression in nude mice of an interleukin 2 receptor-expressing human carcinoma. *Blood* 83: 426-434, 1994.
144. Draoui, M., Siegall, C. B., FitzGerald, D., Pastan, I., and Moody, T.W.: TGF alpha-PE40 inhibits non-small cell lung cancer growth. *Life Sci.* 54: 445-453, 1994.
145. Chiron, M.F., Fryling, C.M., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Cleavage of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and diphtheria toxin by a furin-like enzyme prepared from beef liver. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269: 18167-18176, 1994.
146. FitzGerald, D.J., Fryling, C.M., Zdanovsky, A., Saelinger, C.B., Jounnas, M., Strickland, D., and Leppla, S.: Selection of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin resistant cells with altered expression of a2MR/LRP. *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 737: 138-144, 1994.
147. Battey, F.D., Gagvels, M.E., FitzGearld, D.J., Argraves, W.S., Chappell, D.A., Strauss, J.F., and Strickland, D.K.: The 39-kDa receptor-associated protein regulates ligand binding by the very low density lipoprotein receptor. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269: 23268-23273, 1994.
148. Benhar, I., Wang, Q.-C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin mutants: Replacement of surface-exposed residues in domain III with cysteine residues that can be modified with polyethylene glycol in a site-specific manner. *J. Biol. Chem.* 269: 13398-13404, 1994.
149. Pastan, I.H., Pai, L.H., Brinkmann, U. and FitzGerald, D.J.: Recombinant toxins: New therapeutic agents for cancer. *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 758: 345-354, 1995.

150. FitzGerald, D.J., Fryling, C.M., Zdanovsky, A., Saelinger, C.B., Kounnas, M., Winkles, J.A., Strickland, D., and Leppla, S.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin-mediated selection yields cells with altered expression of low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein. *J. Cell Biol.* 129: 1533-1541, 1995.
151. Mucci, D., Forristal, J., Strickland, D., Morris, R., FitzGerald, D., and Saelinger, C.B.: Basis for cellular susceptibility to *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A. *Infect. Immun.* 63: 2912-2918, 1995.
152. Pitcher, C., Roberts, L., Fawell, S., Zdanovsky, A.G., FitzGerald, D.J., and Lord, J.M.: A potent chimeric toxin is generated by replacing domain III of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin with ricin A chain-KDEL. *Bioconjug. Chem.* 6: 624-629, 1995.
153. FitzGerald, D. (Ed.): *Seminars in Cancer Biology*, Vol. 6, 1995, 317 p.
154. Gu, M., Gordon, V.M., FitzGerald, D.J.P., and Leppla, S.H.: Furin regulates both the activation of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A and the quantity of the toxin receptor expressed on target cells. *Infect. Immun.* 64: 524-527, 1996
155. Pastan, I., Pai, L.H., Brinkmann, U., and FitzGerald, D.: Recombinant immunotoxin. *Breast Cancer Res. Treat.* 38: 3-9, 1996.
156. Zdanovsky, A. G., Zdanovskaia, M.V., Strickland, D., and FitzGerald, D.: Ligand-toxin hybrids directed to the alpha 2-macroglobulin receptor/low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein exhibit lower toxicity than native PE. *J. Biol. Chem.* 271: 6122-6128, 1996.
157. Frankel, A.E., FitzGerald, D., Siegall, C., and Press, O.W.: Advances in immunotoxin biology and therapy: A summary of the Fourth International Symposium on Immunotoxins. *Cancer Res.* 56: 926-932, 1996.
158. FitzGerald, D.J.: Why toxins. *Sem. Cancer Biol.* 7: 87-95, 1996.
159. FitzGerald, D. and Pastan, I.: Recombinant immunotoxins for the treatment of cancer. *J. Controlled Release* 39: 261-265, 1996.
160. Mansfield, E., Pastan, I., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Characterization of RFB4-PE immunotoxins targeted to CD22 on B-cell malignancies. *Bioconjug. Chem.* 7: 557-563, 1996.
161. Chiron, M.F., Ogato, M. and FitzGerald, D.J.: *Pseudomonas* exotoxin exhibits increased sensitivity to furin when sequences at the cleavage site are mutated to resemble the arginine-rich loop of Diphtheria toxin. *Mol. Microbiol.* 22: 769-778, 1996.
162. Rozemuller, H., Rombouts, W.J.C., Hagenbeek, A., Touw, I.P., FitzGerald, D.J.P., Dreitman, R.J., Pastan, I., and Martens, A.C.M.: Treatment of acute myelocytic leukemia with interleukin-6 *Pseudomonas* exotoxin fusion protein: preclinical in vivo studies in a rat leukemia model. *Leukemia* 10: 1796-803, 1996.
163. FitzGerald D.J. Antitumor immunotoxin secretion by T cells: ABSolutely FABulous? [news; comment] Comment on: *Nature Biotechnol.* 15: 46-51. *Nature Biotechnol.* 15: 18-19, 1997.
164. Mansfield, E., Chiron, M.F., Amlot, P., Pastan, I., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Recombinant



- RFB4 single-chain immunotoxin that is cytotoxic towards CD22-positive cells. *Biochem. Soc. Trans.* 25: 709-714, 1997.
165. Mansfield, E., Amlot, P., Pastan, I. and FitzGerald, D.J.: Recombinant RFB4 immunotoxins exhibit potent cytotoxic activity for CD22-bearing cells and tumors. *Blood* 90: 2020-2026, 1997.
  166. Terpstra, W., Rozemuller, H., Breems, D.A., Rombouts, E.J., Prins, A., FitzGerald, D.J., Kreitman, R.J., Wielenga, J.J., Ploemacher, R.E., Lowenberg, B., Hagenbeek, A., and Martens, A.C.: Diphtheria toxin fused to granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor eliminates acute myeloid leukemia cells with the potential to initiate leukemia in immunodeficient mice, but spares normal hemopoietic stem cells. *Blood* 90: 3735-3742, 1997.
  167. Rozemuller, H., Rombouts, E.J., Touw, I.P., FitzGerald, D.J., Kreitman, R.J., Pastan, I., Hagenbeek, A., and Martens, A.C.: Sensitivity of human acute myeloid leukaemia to diphtheria toxin-GM-CSF fusion protein. *Br. J. Haematol.* 98: 952-959, 1997.
  168. Chiron, M.F., Fryling, C.M., and FitzGerald, D.: Furin-mediated cleavage of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin-derived chimeric toxins. *J. Biol. Chem.* 272: 31707-31711, 1997.
  169. FitzGerald, D.J., Fryling, C.M., McKee, M.L., Vennari, J.C., Wrin, T., Cromwell, T.E.M., Daugherty, A.L., and Mersny, R.J.: Characterization of V3-loop *Pseudomonas* exotoxin Chimeras: Candidate vaccines for human immunodeficiency virus-1. *J. Biol. Chem.* 273: 9951-9958, 1998.
  170. Avramoglu, R.K., Nimpf, J., McLeod, R.S., Ko, K.W., Wang, Y., FitzGerald, D., and Yao, Z.: Functional expression of the chicken low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein in a mutant chinese hamster ovary cell line restores toxicity of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A and degradation of alpha2-macroglobulin. *J. Biol. Chem.* 273: 6057-6065, 1998.
  171. Schmoelz, S., Benn, S.J., Laithwaite, J.E., Greenwood, S.J., Marshall, W.S., Munday, N.A., FitzGerald, D.J., and LaMarre, J.: Expression of hepatocyte low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein is post-transcriptionally regulated by extracellular matrix. *Lab. Invest.* 78: 1405-1413, 1998.
  172. Ko, K.W.S., McLeod, R.S., Avramoglu, R.K., Nimpf, J., FitzGerald, D.J., Vukmirica, J., and Yao, Z.: Mutation at the processing site of chicken LDL receptor-related protein impairs efficient endoplasmic reticulum exit but proteolytic cleavage is not essential for its endocytic functions. *J. Biol. Chem.* 273: 27779-27785, 1998.
  173. Mersny, R.J., Daugherty, A.L., Fryling, C.M., and FitzGerald, D.J.: Mucosal immunization with a chimera composed of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and the gp120 V3 loop sequence of HIV-1 induces both salivary and serum antibody responses. *Vaccine* 17: 1425-1433, 1999.
  174. FitzGerald, D.: Recombinant immunotoxins. In Chamow, S. and Ashkenazi, A. (Eds.): *Antibody Fusion Proteins*. Wiley, 1999, pp. 111-126.
  175. McKee, M.L. and FitzGerald, D.J.: Reduction of furin-nicked *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A: An unfolding story. *Biochemistry* 38: 16507-16513, 1999.

176. Laithwaite, J.E., Benn, S.J., Yamate, J., FitzGerald, D.J., and LaMarre, J.: Enhanced macrophage resistance to *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A is correlated with decreased expression of the low-density lipoprotein receptor-related protein. *Infect. Immun.* 67: 5827-5833, 1999.
177. Daugherty, A.L., McKee, M.L., FitzGerald, D.J., and Mrsny, R.J.: Epithelial application of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A results in a selective targeting to cells in the liver, spleen and lymph node. *J. Controlled Release* 65: 297-302, 2000.
178. Kreitman, R.J., Margulies, I., Stetler-Stevenson, M., Wang, Q.C., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Cytotoxic activity of disulfide-stabilized recombinant immunotoxin RFB4(dsFv)-PE38 (BL22) toward fresh malignant cells from patients with B-cell leukemias. *Clin. Cancer Res.* 6: 1476-1487, 2000.
179. FitzGerald, D. and Mrsny, R.J.: New approaches to antigen delivery. *Crit. Rev. Ther. Drug Carrier Sys.* 17: 165-248, 2000.
180. Laithwaite, J.E., Benn, S.J., Marshall, W.S., FitzGerald, D.J., and LaMarre, J.: Divergent *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A sensitivity in normal and transformed liver cells is correlated with low-density lipoprotein receptor-related protein expression. *Toxicol.* 39: 1283-1290, 2001.
181. Obermoeller-McCormick LM, Li Y, Osaka H, FitzGerald DJ, Schwartz AL, Bu G. Dissection of receptor folding and ligand-binding property with functional minireceptors of LDL receptor-related protein. *J Cell Sci.* 114:899-908, 2001.
182. Kreitman, R.J., Wilson, W.H., Bergeron, K., Raggio, M., Stetler-Stevenson, M., FitzGerald, D.J., and Pastan, I.: Efficacy of the Anti-CD22 recombinant immunotoxin BL22 in Chemotherapy-resistant Hairy Cell Leukemia. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 345: 241-247, 2001.
183. Hertle, R. Mrsny, R.J. and FitzGerald, D.J. Dual-Function Vaccine for *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: Characterization of Chimeric Exotoxin A-Pilin Protein. *Infect. Immun.* 69: 6962-6969, 2001.
184. Wedekind JE, Trame CB, Dorywalska M, Koehl P, Raschke TM, McKee M, FitzGerald D, Collier RJ, McKay DB. Refined crystallographic structure of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A and its implications for the molecular mechanism of toxicity. *J Mol Biol.* 314:823-37, 2001.
185. Mrsny, R.J., Daugherty, A.L., McKee, M.L. FitzGerald, D. Bacterial toxins as tools for mucosal vaccination. *Drug Discovery Today.* 7:247-258, 2002.
186. Saka E, Iadarola M, Fitzgerald DJ, Graybiel AM. Local circuit neurons in the striatum regulate neural and behavioral responses to dopaminergic stimulation *PNAS* 99: 9004-9009, 2002.
187. FitzGerald DJ, Kreitman R, Wilson W, Squires D, Pastan I. Recombinant immunotoxins for treating cancer. *Int J Med Microbiol.* 293:577-82, 2004

188. Wilderman PJ, Sowa NA, FitzGerald DJ, FitzGerald PC, Gottesman S, Ochsner UA, Vasil ML. Identification of tandem duplicate regulatory small RNAs in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* involved in iron homeostasis. *PNAS* 101: 9792-7, 2004.
- Hsieh JC, Tham DM, Feng W, Huang F, Embaie S, Liu K, Dean D, Hertle R, Fitzgerald DJ, Mrsny RJ. Intranasal immunization strategy to impede pilin-mediated binding of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to airway epithelial cells. *Infect Immun*. 2005 Nov;73(11):7705-17.
- Pastrana DV, Hanson AJ, Knisely J, Bu G, Fitzgerald DJ. LRP 1 B functions as a receptor for *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Biochim Biophys Acta*. 2005 Sep 25;1741(3):234-9.
- Kreitman RJ, Squires DR, Stetler-Stevenson M, Noel P, FitzGerald DJ, Wilson WH, Pastan I. Phase I trial of recombinant immunotoxin RFB4(dsFv)-PE38 (BL22) in patients with B-cell malignancies. *J Clin Oncol*. 2005 Sep 20;23(27):6719-29. Epub 2005 Aug 1.
- Pastrana DV, Fitzgerald DJ. A nonradioactive, cell-free method for measuring protein synthesis inhibition by *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. *Anal Biochem*. 2006 Apr 17; [Epub ahead of print]

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT E2**



A service of the National Library of Medicine  
and the National Institutes of Health

My NCBI  
[Sign In] [Register]

All Databases

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

B

Search PubMed



for "Nature"[Jour] AND 1988[pdat] AND pastan[author]

Go

Clear

Save S

Limits

Preview/Index

History

Clipboard

Details

Display AbstractPlus



Show 20

Sort by

Send to

About Entrez

Text Version

All: 1 Review: 0

Entrez PubMed

Overview

Help | FAQ

Tutorials

New/Noteworthy

E-Utilities

PubMed Services

Journals Database

MeSH Database

Single Citation Matcher

Batch Citation Matcher

Clinical Queries

Special Queries

LinkOut

My NCBI

Related Resources

Order Documents

NLM Mobile

NLM Catalog

NLM Gateway

TOXNET

Consumer Health

Clinical Alerts

ClinicalTrials.gov

PubMed Central

☐ 1: Nature. 1988 Sep 22;335(6188):369-72.

**Selective killing of HIV-infected cells by recombinant human CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin hybrid protein.**

**Chaudhary VK, Mizukami T, Fuerst TR, FitzGerald DJ, Moss B, Pastan I, Berger EA.**

Laboratory of Molecular Biology, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, Maryland 20892.

It is projected that in the absence of effective therapy, most individuals infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) will develop acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) and ultimately succumb to a combination of opportunistic microbial infections, malignancies and direct pathogenic effects of the virus. Anti-viral agents, immunomodulators, and inhibitors of specific HIV functions are being tested as potential treatments to alleviate the high morbidity and mortality. An alternative therapeutic concept involves the development of cytotoxic agents that are targeted to kill HIV-infected cells. Here we describe the purification and characterization of a recombinant protein produced in *Escherichia coli* that contains the HIV-binding portion of the human CD4 molecule linked to active regions of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin A. This hybrid protein displays selective toxicity toward cells expressing the HIV envelope glycoprotein and thus represents a promising novel therapeutic agent for the treatment of AIDS.

PMID: 2843774 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

**nature**

#### Related Links

CD4-Pseudomonas e. hybrid protein blocks of human immunodeficiency virus infection in vitro active against cells e. the envelope glycoprotein diverse primate immunodeficiency virus

Anti-HIV activity of C *Pseudomonas* exotoxin infected primary human lymphocytes and monocyte/macrophages

Elimination of infectious immunodeficiency virus human T-cell culture: synergistic action of *Pseudomonas* exotoxin reverse transcriptase

A rapid solution immunoassay to quantify binding of CD4 human immunodeficiency virus envelope glycoprotein

Anti-HIV effects of CD4 *Pseudomonas* exotoxin human lymphocyte monocyte/macrophage lines. [Ann NY Acad Sci]

See all Related Articles

Display AbstractPlus



Show 20

Sort by

Send to

Write to the Help Desk

NCBI | NLM | NIH

Department of Health &amp; Human Services

Privacy Statement | Freedom of Information Act | Disclaimer

Exhibit 2

Oct 2 2006 08:20:36

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT E3**



A service of the National Library of Medicine  
and the National Institutes of Health

My NCBI  
[Sign In] [Register]

All Databases

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

B

Search PubMed

for "AIDS research and human retroviruses"[Jour] AN

Limits Preview/Index History Clipboard Details

Display AbstractPlus

Show 20 Sort by

Send to

About Entrez

Text Version

All: 1 Review: 0

Entrez PubMed

Overview

Help | FAQ

Tutorials

New/Noteworthy

E-Utilities

PubMed Services

Journals Database

MeSH Database

Single Citation Matcher

Batch Citation Matcher

Clinical Queries

Special Queries

LinkOut

My NCBI

Related Resources

Order Documents

NLM Mobile

NLM Catalog

NLM Gateway

TOXNET

Consumer Health

Clinical Alerts

ClinicalTrials.gov

PubMed Central

**Recombinant CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin hybrid protein displays HIV-specific cytotoxicity without affecting MHC class II-dependent functions.**

**Berger EA, Chaudhary VK, Clouse KA, Jaraquemada D, Nicholas JA, Rubino KL, Fitzgerald DJ, Pastan I, Moss B.**

Laboratory of Viral Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland 20892.

The present study describes several in vitro activities of CD4(178)-PE40, a recombinant protein containing a portion of human CD4 linked to active regions of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A. Using assays for cell viability, we demonstrate that the hybrid toxin displays highly selective cytotoxicity for HIV-infected T lymphocytes. In a latently infected human T-cell line which is inducible for HIV expression, toxin sensitivity is observed only upon virus induction. At concentrations which readily kill HIV-infected T cells, CD4(178)-PE40 has no observable cytotoxic effects on uninfected human cell lines expressing surface major histocompatibility complex (MHC) Class II molecules, and does not interfere with cellular responses known to be dependent on functional association between CD4 and MHC Class II molecules.

PMID: 2114147 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

#### Related Links

Soluble CD4-PE40 is for a transfected mar cell line stably expres envelope protein of h immunodeficiency vir 1), and cytotoxicity i: inhibited by the sera ~~infection~~ ~~retro~~

Activity of CD4-Pseu exotoxin against cell: expressing diverse fc HIV and SIV envelop ~~g~~ ~~proteins~~ ~~Defic~~

Anti-HIV effects of C1 *Pseudomonas* exotox human lymphocyte a monocyte/macrophag lines. [Ann NY Ac

Elimination of infecti immunodeficiency vir human T-cell culture: synergistic action of *Pseudomonas* exotox reve ~~re~~ ~~act~~ ~~de~~

Anti-HIV activity of C *Pseudomonas* exotox infected primary hurr lymphocytes and monocyte/macroph ~~ph~~

See all Related Article

Display AbstractPlus  20

Write to the Help Desk

NCBI | NLM | NIH

Department of Health & Human Services

[Privacy Statement](#) | [Freedom of Information Act](#) | [Disclaimer](#)

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT E4**





A service of the National Library of Medicine  
and the National Institutes of Health

www.pubmed.gov

My NCBI  
[Sign In] [Register]

All Databases

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

Book

Search PubMed

for

Go

Clear

Limits

Preview/Index

History

Clipboard

Details

Display AbstractPlus

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

All: 1

Review: 0



☐ 1: Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1990 Nov;87(22):8889-93.

Full Text Article at  
www.pnas.org

FREE full text article  
in PubMed Central

Links

**Elimination of infectious human immunodeficiency virus from human T-cell cultures by synergistic action of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin and reverse transcriptase inhibitors.**

**Ashorn P, Moss B, Weinstein JN, Chaudhary VK, Fitzgerald DJ, Pastan I, Berger EA.**

Laboratory of Viral Diseases, National Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD 20892.

We have previously described a recombinant protein, designated CD4(178)-PE40, consisting of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) envelope glycoprotein-binding region of human CD4 linked to the translocation and ADP-ribosylation domains of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A. By virtue of its affinity for gp120 (the external subunit of the HIV envelope glycoprotein), the hybrid toxin selectively binds to and kills HIV-1-infected human T cells expressing surface envelope glycoprotein and also inhibits HIV-1 spread in mixed cultures of infected and uninfected cells. We now report that CD4(178)-PE40 and reverse transcriptase inhibitors exert highly synergistic effects against HIV-1 spread in cultured human primary T cells. Furthermore, combination treatment can completely eliminate infectious HIV-1 from cultures of human T-cell lines. This conclusion is based on protection of a susceptible cell population from HIV-induced killing, complete inhibition of virus protein accumulation, and elimination of HIV DNA (as judged by quantitative polymerase chain reaction analysis). The results highlight the therapeutic potential of treatment regimens involving combination of a virostatic drug that inhibits virus replication plus an agent that selectively kills HIV-infected cells.

PMID: 1701055 [PubMed - Indexed for MEDLINE]

Display AbstractPlus

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

Write to the Help Desk

NCBI | NLM | NIH

Department of Health & Human Services

Privacy Statement | Freedom of Information Act | Disclaimer

Exhibit 4

## Related Links

Anti-HIV effects of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin on human lymphocyte and monocyte/macrophage (Proc Natl Acad Sci 1990)

Activity of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin against cells expressing diverse forms of the HIV and SIV envelope glycoproteins (AIDS 1992)

Anti-HIV activity of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin on infected primary human lymphocytes and monocyte/macrophages (AIDS 1991)

CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin hybrid protein blocks the spread of human immunodeficiency virus infection in vitro and is active against cells expressing the envelope glycoproteins from diverse primate immunodeficiency viruses (AIDS 1989)

CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin conjugates delay but do not fully inhibit human immunodeficiency virus replication in lymphocytes in vitro. [J Clin Invest. 1990]

See all Related Articles...

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT E5**



A service of the National Library of Medicine  
and the National Institutes of Health

www.pubmed.gov

My NCBI  
[Sign In] [Reg]

All Databases

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

B

Search PubMed

for "Proceedings of the National Academy of Science: Go

Clear

Save S

Limits Preview/Index History Clipboard Details

Display AbstractPlus

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

About Entrez

Text Version

All: 1 Review: 0

Entrez PubMed

Overview

Help | FAQ

Tutorials

New/Noteworthy

E-Utilities

PubMed Services

Journals Database

MeSH Database

Single Citation Matcher

Batch Citation Matcher

Clinical Queries

Special Queries

LinkOut

My NCBI

Related Resources

Order Documents

NLM Mobile

NLM Catalog

NLM Gateway

TOXNET

Consumer Health

Clinical Alerts

ClinicalTrials.gov

PubMed Central

☐ 1: Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1989 Dec;86(23):9539-43.

Full Text Article at  
www.pnas.org

Full text article  
in PubMed Central

**CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin hybrid protein blocks the spread of human immunodeficiency virus infection in vitro and is active against cells expressing the envelope glycoproteins from diverse primate immunodeficiency retroviruses.**

**Berger EA, Clouse KA, Chaudhary VK, Chakrabarti S, Fitzgerald DJ, Pastan I, Moss B.**

Laboratory of Viral Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, Bethesda, MD 20852.

We previously described an unusual recombinant protein, designated CD4(178)-PE40, containing the gp120 binding region of human CD4 linked to active regions of Pseudomonas exotoxin A. The ability of this molecule to selectively inhibit protein synthesis in cells expressing the surface envelope glycoprotein of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) suggested this molecule may be useful in treating infected individuals. To further evaluate its therapeutic potential, several in vitro properties of this hybrid toxin were examined. CD4(178)-PE40 was found to be an extremely potent cytotoxic agent, selectively killing HIV-infected cells with IC50 values around 100 pM. In a coculture system employing mixtures of HIV-infected and -uninfected cells, the hybrid toxin inhibited spread of the infection, as judged by a delay in HIV-induced cell killing and a dramatic suppression of free virus production. Experiments with control recombinant proteins indicated that this protective effect was primarily due to selective killing of the HIV-infected cells, rather than to a simple blocking effect of the CD4 moiety of the hybrid toxin. Using recombinant vaccinia viruses as expression vectors, we found the hybrid toxin to be active against cells expressing the envelope glycoproteins of divergent isolates of HIV-1, as well as HIV-2 and simian immunodeficiency virus. These results provide further support for the therapeutic potential of CD4(178)-PE40 in the treatment of HIV-infected individuals.

#### Related Links

Activity of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin against cells expressing diverse HIV and SIV envelope glycoproteins

Anti-HIV activity of C Pseudomonas exotoxin infected primary human lymphocytes and monocyte/macrophages

Anti-HIV effects of C Pseudomonas exotoxin human lymphocyte monocyte/macrophage lines. [Ann NY Acad Sci]

Elimination of infective immunodeficiency virus human T-cell culture: synergistic action of Pseudomonas exotoxin and interferon- $\alpha$

Soluble CD4-PE40 is for a transfected mar cell line stably expressing envelope protein of human immunodeficiency virus 1), and cytotoxicity is inhibited by the sera from AIDS patients

See all Related Articles

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT E6**



A service of the National Library of Medicine  
and the National Institutes of Health

www.pubmed.gov

My NCBI  
[Sign In] [Register]

All Databases

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

Book

Search PubMed

for

Go

Clear

Limits

Preview/Index

History

Clipboard

Details

Display Abstract/Plus

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

All: 1 Review: 0



☐ 1: J Leukoc Biol. 2006 Aug 21; [Epub ahead of print]



Full Text  
Leukoc Biol

FREE

Links

**Anti-HIV-1 Immunotoxin 3B3(Fv)-PE38: enhanced potency against clinical isolates in human PMBCs and macrophages, and negligible hepatotoxicity in macaques.**

**Kennedy PE, Bera TK, Wang QC, Gallo M, Wagner W, Lewis MG, Berger EA, Pastan I.**

\*Laboratory of Viral Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases and Laboratory of Molecular Biology, National Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland; and Southern Research Institute, Frederick, Maryland.

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) against human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) infection dramatically suppresses viral load, leading to marked reductions in HIV-1 associated morbidity and mortality. However, infected cell reservoirs and low-level replication persist in the face of suppressive HAART, leading invariably to viral rebound upon cessation of treatment. Toxins engineered to target the Env glycoprotein on the surface of productively infected cells represent a complementary strategy to deplete these reservoirs. We described previously highly selective killing of Env-expressing cell lines by CD4(178)-PE40 and 3B3(Fv)-PE38, recombinant derivatives of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* exotoxin A containing distinct targeting moieties against gp120. In the present report, we compare the *in vitro* potency and breadth of these chimeric toxins against multiple clinical HIV-1 isolates, replicating in biologically relevant primary human target cell types. In PMBCs, 3B3(Fv)-PE38 blocked spreading infection by all isolates examined, with greater potency than CD4(178)-PE40. 3B3(Fv)-PE38 also potently inhibited spreading HIV-1 infection in primary macrophages. Control experiments demonstrated that in both target cell types, most of the 3B3(Fv)-PE38 activity was due to selective killing of infected cells, and not merely to neutralization by the antibody moiety of the chimeric toxin. High-dose treatment of rhesus macaques with 3B3(Fv)-PE38 did not induce liver toxicity, whereas equivalent dosage of CD4(178)-PE40 induced mild hepatotoxicity. These findings highlight the potential use of 3B3(Fv)-PE38 for depleting HIV-infected cell reservoirs persisting in the face of HAART.

PMID: 16923920 [PubMed - as supplied by publisher]

## Related Links

Chimeric toxins targeted to the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 envelope glycoprotein augment the *in vivo* activity of combination antiretroviral therapy in thymic/SCID-Hu mice. [J Infect Dis. 2000]

Specific killing of HIV-infected lymphocytes by a recombinant immunotoxin directed against the HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein. [J Infect Dis. 1998]

CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin hybrid protein blocks the spread of human immunodeficiency virus infection *in vitro* and is active against cells expressing the envelope glycoproteins from diverse primate immunodeficiency viruses. [J Infect Dis. 1989]

Construction and enhanced cytotoxicity of a [cyanovirin-N]-[Pseudomonas exotoxin] conjugate against human immunodeficiency virus-infected cells. [J Infect Dis. 1997]

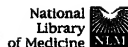
Anti-HIV activity of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin on infected primary human lymphocytes and monocyte/macrophages. [J Infect Dis. 1991]

See all Related Articles...

# **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

## **PART II**

### **EXHIBIT F**



All Databases  
Search PubMed

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

B

for anti hiv immunotoxins

Go

Clear

Save S.

☒ Limits

Preview/Index

History

Clipboard

Details

Limits: **Publication Date from 1990 to 1998**

Display Summary

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

About Entrez

Text Version

All: 26 Review: 5

Items 1 - 20 of 26

Page

1

of 2 Next

Entrez PubMed

Overview

Help | FAQ

Tutorial

New/Noteworthy

E-Utilities

PubMed Services

Journals Database

MeSH Database

Single Citation Matcher

Batch Citation Matcher

Clinical Queries

Special Queries

LinkOut

My NCBI (Cubby)

Related Resources

Order Documents

NLM Mobile

NLM Catalog

NLM Gateway

TOXNET

Consumer Health

Clinical Alerts

ClinicalTrials.gov

PubMed Central

☐ 1: [Bera TK, Kennedy PE, Berger EA, Barbas CF 3rd, Pastan I.](#)

Related Articles, Links

Specific killing of HIV-infected lymphocytes by a recombinant immunotoxin directed against the HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein. *Mol Med.* 1998 Jun;4(6):384-91. PMID: 10780881 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 2: [Berger EA, Moss B, Pastan I.](#)

Related Articles, Links

Reconsidering targeted toxins to eliminate HIV infection: you gotta have HAART. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 1998 Sep 29;95(20):11511-3. Review. Erratum in: *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1999 Feb 2;96(3):1162. PMID: 9751696 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 3: [Martin-Serrano J, Folgueira L, Lain de Lera T, Pedraza MA, Lemichez E, Sanchez-Palomino S, Noriega AR, Boquet P, Alcamí J.](#)

Related Articles, Links

In vitro selective elimination of HIV-infected cells from peripheral blood in AIDS patients by the immunotoxin DAB389CD4. *AIDS.* 1998 May 28;12(8):859-63. PMID: 9631138 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 4: [Van Oijen MG, Preijers FW.](#)

Related Articles, Links

Rationale for the use of immunotoxins in the treatment of HIV-infected humans. *J Drug Target.* 1998;5(2):75-91. Review. PMID: 9588864 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 5: [Pincus SH, Cole RL, Watson-McKown R, Pinter A, Honnen W, Cole B, Wise KS.](#)









Related Articles, Links

Immunologic cross-reaction between HIV type 1 p17 and Mycoplasma hyorhinis variable lipoprotein. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* 1998 Mar 20;14(5):419-25. PMID: 9546801 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 6: [Tolstikov VV, Cole R, Fang H, Pincus SH.](#)

Related Articles, Links

Influence of endosome-destabilizing peptides on efficacy of anti-HIV immunotoxins. *Bioconjug Chem.* 1997 Jan-Feb;8(1):38-43. PMID: 9026033 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

- ☐ **7:** Pincus SH. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 Therapeutic potential of anti-HIV immunotoxins.  
Antiviral Res. 1996 Dec;33(1):1-9. Review.  
PMID: 8955848 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **8:** Pincus SH, Wehrly K, Cole R, Fang H, Lewis GK, McClure J, Conley AJ, Wahren B, Posner MR, Notkins AL, Tilley SA, Pinter A, Eiden L, Teintze M, Dorward D, Tolstikov VV. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 In vitro effects of anti-HIV immunotoxins directed against multiple epitopes on HIV type 1 envelope glycoprotein 160.  
AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1996 Jul 20;12(11):1041-51.  
PMID: 8827220 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **9:** Borvak J, Chou CS, Bell K, Van Dyke G, Zola H, Ramilo O, Vitetta ES. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 Expression of CD25 defines peripheral blood mononuclear cells with productive versus latent HIV infection.  
J Immunol. 1995 Sep 15;155(6):3196-204.  
PMID: 7673732 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **10:** Davey RT Jr, Boenning CM, Herpin BR, Batts DH, Metcalf JA, Wathen L, Cox SR, Polis MA, Kovacs JA, Falloon J, et al. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 Use of recombinant soluble CD4 Pseudomonas exotoxin, a novel immunotoxin, for treatment of persons infected with human immunodeficiency virus.  
J Infect Dis. 1994 Nov;170(5):1180-8.  
PMID: 7963711 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **11:** Winters MA, Merigan TC. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 Continuous presence of CD4-PE40 is required for antiviral activity against single-passage HIV isolates and infected peripheral blood mononuclear cells.  
AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1993 Nov;9(11):1091-6.  
PMID: 8312052 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **12:** Ramilo O, Bell KD, Uhr JW, Vitetta ES. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 Role of CD25+ and CD25-T cells in acute HIV infection in vitro.  
J Immunol. 1993 Jun 1;150(11):5202-8.  
PMID: 8496611 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **13:** Pincus SH, Messer KG, Schwartz DH, Lewis GK, Graham BS, Blattner WA, Fisher G. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 Differences in the antibody response to human immunodeficiency virus-1 envelope glycoprotein (gp160) in infected laboratory workers and vaccinees.  
J Clin Invest. 1993 May;91(5):1987-96.  
PMID: 7683694 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **14:** Erice A, Balfour HH Jr, Myers DE, Leske VL, Sannerud KJ, Kuebelbeck V, Irvin JD, Uckun FM. [Related Articles, Links](#)  
 Anti-human immunodeficiency virus type 1 activity of an anti-CD4 immunoconjugate containing pokeweed antiviral protein.  
Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 1993 Apr;37(4):835-8.  
PMID: 8494381 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]
- ☐ **15:** Bell KD, Ramilo O, Vitetta ES. [Related Articles, Links](#)





Combined use of an immunotoxin and cyclosporine to prevent both activated and quiescent peripheral blood T cells from producing type 1 human immunodeficiency virus.

Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993 Feb 15;90(4):1411-5.  
PMID: 8434001 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]



**16:** [Pincus SH](#), [McClure J](#).

[Related Articles](#), [Links](#)



Soluble CD4 enhances the efficacy of immunotoxins directed against gp41 of the human immunodeficiency virus.

Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993 Jan 1;90(1):332-6.  
PMID: 8419938 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]



**17:** [Cobb PW](#), [LeMaistre CF](#).

[Related Articles](#), [Links](#)



Therapeutic use of immunotoxins.

Semin Hematol. 1992 Jul;29(3 Suppl 2):6-13. Review.  
PMID: 1509295 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]



**18:** [Yap PL](#), [Todd AA](#), [Williams PE](#), [Hague RA](#), [Mok J](#), [Burns SM](#), [Brettie RP](#).

[Related Articles](#), [Links](#)



Use of intravenous immunoglobulin in acquired immune deficiency syndrome.

Cancer. 1991 Sep 15;68(6 Suppl):1440-50. Review.  
PMID: 1878843 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]



**19:** [Pincus SH](#), [Cole RL](#), [Hersh EM](#), [Lake D](#), [Masuho Y](#), [Durda PJ](#), [McClure J](#).

[Related Articles](#), [Links](#)



In vitro efficacy of anti-HIV immunotoxins targeted by various antibodies to the envelope protein.

J Immunol. 1991 Jun 15;146(12):4315-24.  
PMID: 1710247 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]



**20:** [Ashorn P](#), [Englund G](#), [Martin MA](#), [Moss B](#), [Berger EA](#).

[Related Articles](#), [Links](#)



Anti-HIV activity of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin on infected primary human lymphocytes and monocyte/macrophages.

J Infect Dis. 1991 Apr;163(4):703-9.  
PMID: 2010626 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

Items 1 - 20 of 26

Page 1

of 2 Next

Display Summary

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

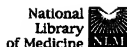
Write to the Help Desk

NCBI | NLM | NIH

Department of Health & Human Services

[Privacy Statement](#) | [Freedom of Information Act](#) | [Disclaimer](#)

Sep 9 2005 04:38:00



All Databases

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

B

Search PubMed

for anti hiv immunotoxins

Go

Clear

Save S



Limits

Preview/Index

History

Clipboard

Details

Limits: **Publication Date from 1990 to 1998**

Display Summary

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

All: 26

Review: 5



Items 21 - 26 of 26

Previous

Page 2

of 2

☐ **21: Pincus SH, Wehrly K, Chesebro B.**

Related Articles, Links



Use of a focal infectivity assay for testing susceptibility of HIV to antiviral agents.

Biotechniques. 1991 Mar;10(3):336-42.

PMID: 2064772 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **22: Pincus SH, Wehrly K.**

Related Articles, Links



AZT demonstrates anti-HIV-1 activity in persistently infected cell lines: implications for combination chemotherapy and immunotherapy.

J Infect Dis. 1990 Dec;162(6):1233-8.

PMID: 2205256 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **23: Zarling JM, Moran PA, Haffar O, Sias J, Richman DD, Spina CA, Myers DE, Kuebelbeck V, Ledbetter JA, Uckun FM.**

Related Articles, Links



Inhibition of HIV replication by pokeweed antiviral protein targeted to CD4+ cells by monoclonal antibodies.

Nature. 1990 Sep 6;347(6288):92-5.

PMID: 1975641 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **24: Pincus SH, Wehrly K, Tschachler E, Hayes SF, Buller RS, Reitz M.**

Related Articles, Links



Variants selected by treatment of human immunodeficiency virus-infected cells with an immunotoxin.

J Exp Med. 1990 Sep 1;172(3):745-57.

PMID: 1696955 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **25: Matsushita S, Koito A, Maeda Y, Hattori T, Takatsuki K.**

Related Articles, Links



Selective killing of HIV-infected cells by anti-gp120 immunotoxins.

AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1990 Feb;6(2):193-203.

PMID: 2328157 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **26: Ashom P, Moss B, Berger EA.**

Related Articles, Links



Anti-HIV effects of CD4-Pseudomonas exotoxin on human lymphocyte and monocyte/macrophage cell lines.

Ann N Y Acad Sci. 1990;616:149-54.

PMID: 2078015 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

Items 21 - 26 of 26

Previous

Page 2

of 2

Display Summary

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

About Entrez

Text Version

Entrez PubMed

Overview

Help | FAQ

Tutorial

New/Noteworthy

E-Utilities

PubMed Services

Journals Database

MeSH Database

Single Citation Matcher

Batch Citation Matcher

Clinical Queries

Special Queries

LinkOut

My NCBI (Cubby)

Related Resources

Order Documents

NLM Mobile

NLM Catalog

NLM Gateway

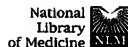
TOXNET

Consumer Health

Clinical Alerts

ClinicalTrials.gov

PubMed Central



All Databases  
Search PubMed

PubMed

Nucleotide

Protein

Genome

Structure

OMIM

PMC

Journals

B

for anti gp120 immunotoxins

Go

Clear

Save S

☒ Limits ☐ Preview/Index ☐ History ☐ Clipboard ☐ Details

Limits: **Publication Date from 1990 to 1998**

Display Summary

Show 20

Sort by

Send to

About Entrez

Text Version

All: 12 Review: 1

Items 1 - 12 of 12

One page.

Entrez PubMed

Overview

Help | FAQ

Tutorial

New/Noteworthy

E-Utilities

PubMed Services

Journals Database

MeSH Database

Batch Citation Matcher

Clinical Queries

Special Queries

LinkOut

My NCBI (Cubby)

Related Resources

Order Documents

NLM Mobile

NLM Catalog

NLM Gateway

TOXNET

Consumer Health

Clinical Alerts

ClinicalTrials.gov

PubMed Central

☐ 1: [Bera TK, Kennedy PE, Berger EA, Barbas CF 3rd, Pastan J.](#) [Related Articles, Links](#)

Specific killing of HIV-infected lymphocytes by a recombinant immunotoxin directed against the HIV-1 envelope glycoprotein. *Mol Med.* 1998 Jun;4(6):384-91. PMID: 10780881 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 2: [Van Oijen MG, Preijers FW.](#) [Related Articles, Links](#)

Rationale for the use of immunotoxins in the treatment of HIV-infected humans. *J Drug Target.* 1998;5(2):75-91. Review. PMID: 9588864 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 3: [Pincus SH, Cole RL, Watson-McKown R, Pinter A, Honnen W, Cole B, Wise KS.](#) [Related Articles, Links](#)

Immunologic cross-reaction between HIV type 1 p17 and Mycoplasma hyorhinis variable lipoprotein. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* 1998 Mar 20;14(5):419-25. PMID: 9546801 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 4: [Tolstikov VV, Cole R, Fang H, Pincus SH.](#) [Related Articles, Links](#)

Influence of endosome-destabilizing peptides on efficacy of anti-HIV immunotoxins. *Bioconjug Chem.* 1997 Jan-Feb;8(1):38-43. PMID: 9026033 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

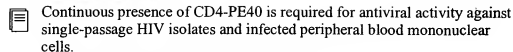
☐ 5: [Pincus SH, Wehrly K, Cole R, Fang H, Lewis GK, McClure J, Conley AJ, Wahren B, Posner MR, Notkins AL, Tilley SA, Pinter A, Eiden L, Teintze M, Dorward D, Tolstikov VV.](#) [Related Articles, Links](#)

In vitro effects of anti-HIV immunotoxins directed against multiple epitopes on HIV type 1 envelope glycoprotein 160. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses.* 1996 Jul 20;12(11):1041-51. PMID: 8827220 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ 6: [Davey RT Jr, Boenning CM, Herpin BR, Batts DH, Metcalf JA, Wathen L, Cox SR, Polis MA, Kovacs JA, Falloun J, et al.](#) [Related Articles, Links](#)

Use of recombinant soluble CD4 Pseudomonas exotoxin, a novel immunotoxin, for treatment of persons infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *J Infect Dis.* 1994 Nov;170(5):1180-8. PMID: 7963711 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **7:** Winters MA, Merigan TC. [Related Articles, Links](#)



Continuous presence of CD4-PE40 is required for antiviral activity against single-passage HIV isolates and infected peripheral blood mononuclear cells.

AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1993 Nov;9(11):1091-6.  
PMID: 8312052 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **8:** Pincus SH, Messer KG, Schwartz DH, Lewis GK, Graham BS, Blattner WA, Fisher G. [Related Articles, Links](#)



Differences in the antibody response to human immunodeficiency virus-1 envelope glycoprotein (gp160) in infected laboratory workers and vaccinees.

J Clin Invest. 1993 May;91(5):1987-96.  
PMID: 7683694 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **9:** Pincus SH, McClure J. [Related Articles, Links](#)



Soluble CD4 enhances the efficacy of immunotoxins directed against gp41 of the human immunodeficiency virus.

Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1993 Jan 1;90(1):332-6.  
PMID: 8419938 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **10:** Pincus SH, Wehrly K, Chesebro B. [Related Articles, Links](#)



Use of a focal infectivity assay for testing susceptibility of HIV to antiviral agents.

Biotechniques. 1991 Mar;10(3):336-42.  
PMID: 2064772 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **11:** Pincus SH, Wehrly K, Tschachler E, Hayes SF, Buller RS, Reitz M. [Related Articles, Links](#)



Variants selected by treatment of human immunodeficiency virus-infected cells with an immunotoxin.

J Exp Med. 1990 Sep 1;172(3):745-57.  
PMID: 1696955 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

☐ **12:** Matsushita S, Koito A, Maeda Y, Hattori T, Takatsuki K. [Related Articles, Links](#)



Selective killing of HIV-infected cells by anti-gp120 immunotoxins.

AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses. 1990 Feb;6(2):193-203.  
PMID: 2328157 [PubMed - indexed for MEDLINE]

Display Summary

Show 20

Sort by

Send to



Write to the Help Desk

NCBI | NLM | NIH

Department of Health & Human Services

[Privacy Statement](#) | [Freedom of Information Act](#) | [Disclaimer](#)

Sep 9 2005 04:38:00